

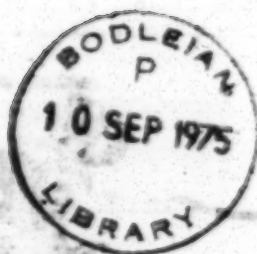
VALENTINE AND ORSON,

The Two SONS of the
Emperour of Greece.

Newly Corrected and Amended; with New Pictures, lively
Expressing the HISTORY.



London: Printed by E. M. for E. Tracy, at the Sign of the Three Bibles, on
London-Bridge. MDCCXII.



Johnson, Francis, by E. M. for F. J. at the Sign of the Green Dragon, on
MDCCLXII.

The PRINTER to the READER.

AMongst many Histories, as well Antient as Modern, which have in former Times borrowed our *English* Phrase to speak withal, this (gentl Reader) here of *Valentine and Orson*, Sons to the Emperour of *Greece*, now once again Imprinted, crave a free Passage of thy Acceptance, and puts it self to the Censure of those Historiographers, which make Invention the Eldest Daughter of the Seven Sciences. Therefore, considering with my self the Worthiness of the Story, with the Variety thereof, being many Years ago first Written in *French*, and since Translated into *English*; where it hath found a favourable Welcome, as well of Superiours as Inferiours; I have now again, to my Cost and Charge, published it to the Eye and Ear of such, to be seen or heard, as take Pleasure in these kind of Writings. It is furnished with much State of Matter, Elegancy and Invention, and deck'd forth with many fair Models and lively Pictures, all pertinent and agreeable to the Subject of the History, which I have caused to be newly Cut; not only to make it carry the more Grace in Reading, but a greater Lustre to Heroick Atchievements of Knightly Adventures: For here may the Princely Mind see his own Model; the Knightly Tilter his Martial Atchievement; and the Amorous Lady her dulcet Passages of Love. Here are Countries, with the Courts of Kings deciphered; the Magnitude of Honours laid open, and the true Forms of Turnaments described; and between Knight and Knight are here most lively Combats portrayed, to the great Content of the Reader. Let no Man therefore think his Time ill spent, or his Labour lost, where the Matter affords such Copiousness of Pleasure. The History for the Strangeness, may well bear the Title of *Courtly Contents*, for indeed it is a Garden of Courtly Delights, wherein grow Flowers of an extraordinary Savour, that gives a Scent in the Bosoms of Nobility, Ladies, Knights, and Gentlewomen: It gives also a Working to the Minds of the dull Country Swain and (as it were) leads them to search out for Martial Atchievements, fitting many Pastimes. Herein is also contained the true Difference twixt Art and Nature; for in *Valentine* is comprehended the Education

The PRINTER to the READER.

Art; and in *Orson* the true Working of Nature; for being both one Emperour's Sons, the one brought up in a Prince's Palace, the other among Salvage Beasts, now makes the Current pass with more Admiration to the Reader: Mark but the Carriage of the wild *Orson*, and you shall find that Nature hath a Being above Art, but yet Nature bettered by Art, hath a more noble Working. The History here Written was Translated out of *French* into *English*, above a Hundred Years ago, by one *Henry Watson*, and since that time it hath been by him Corrected, and put into a more pliant Style; and so followed on to the Press till this present Edition, which I have (as you see) here Published for thy Benefit; therefore, *Gentle Reader*, accept of this my Cost and Pains, who had rather prove a Loser, than so worthy a Story as this is should lie in Obscurity; for there are few Subjects of Human Carriage, but are herein handled, therefore the more fitting to be seen into. If you desire to see the Care and Troubles of Kings, here they are; if you desire to know the Battles of Martial Champions, here they are; if of Courtly Turnaments, and Combats of Princes, here they are; if of the Travels of Knightly Adventures, here they are; if of the Sorrows of Distressed Ladies, here they are; if of strange Births and Salvage Educations, here they are; if of Friends long lost, and their joyful Meeting again, here they are; if of Charms and Enchantments, here they are; if of the Reward of Traytors and Treasons, here they are; if of long Captivities and Imprisonments, here they are: Yea, here are all the Varieties and Passages that may furnish forth a History fit for a Reader's Pleasure; for no unseemly Words or Speeches are herein contained, but such as are modestly carried. Considering all which, I am now encouraged to put this old Story into a new Livery, and not suffer that to lie buried, that a little Cost may keep alive. And so, *Gentle Reader*, craving thy kind Acceptance, I wish thee as much Willingness to the Reading, as I have been Forward in the Printing; and so I End.

The

The HISTORY of *VALENTINE and ORSON.*

CHAP. I. *How King Pepin Banished his Queen Bertha; and how he gave his Sister Bellifant in Marriage to Alexander, Emperor of Constantinople.*



WE find it set down in antient Chronicles, that the thrice Noble and Valiant *Pepin*, some time King of *France*, took to Wife *Bertha*, who was descended of no less than Royal Race; this Lady was exceeding Fair and Wise, but wonderfully cumbered with many Adversities and Troubles, enviously beset on every side; which with great Patience she suffered. The chief Instrument of all this Mischief towards this good Queen was plotted and effected by a false and cursed old Woman, who first of all brought her in Disgrace with the King her Husband, and after to be quite Banished his Bed, while she, in a cunning manner, brought in
Daughter

The History of Valentine and Orson.

Daughter of her own in the good Queen's stead: This old Woman having thus brought her Treachery to effect (for her Daughter somewhat resembled *Bertha*) it so came to pass, that King *Pepin* had two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, *Haufray* and *Henry*, both which Sons so grieved the King, and wasted the Country of *France* by their Outrages and Fury, that in the End they caused the Queen *Bertha* to be utterly Banished, where she passed a great part of her Days in doleful Lamentation, and abundance of Sorrow: She long endured those miserable Days of Sorrow, at the last began to receive Comfort again; for it so chanced after, at the Request of divers great Peers and Lords of *France*, this good Queen began to find Favour with the King her Husband, who when he knew the Treachery that wicked Woman had plotted against her, much bewailed the Miseries she had endured, and with great Honour and Triumph received her again most kindly. The Queen being thus restored to her former Bed, in short time conceived, and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called *Charlemain the Puissant*; but the King himself was continually hunted from Place to Place by the aforesaid *Haufray* and *Henry*, and at last compelled by them to forsake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the ensuing History. My Purpose at this present, is, to set down unto the Reader, the whole Matter contained in this Book; and especially the valiant Acts and Deeds of *Valentine*, and his Brother *Orson*. This King *Pepin* had a Sister named *Bellisant*, a Woman of great Wit, Beauty, and all the Endowments that Nature might afford, which caused her Brother's Love mightily to appear to all the World, in the ardent Love and Affection that he bare her: It chanced so, that the Name of this lovely Personage spread it self abroad in other Regions, that at last *Alexander*, Emperour of *Constantinople*, who was much inflamed with the Report of her Beauty, came into *France*, accompanied with a gallant Troop of his Nobility, all richly set out with all manner of Pomp belonging to so great a Personage. This Emperor, shortly after his arrival, suddenly assembled all his Lords in their rich Habliments, appointing them to take their Way towards King *Pepin's* Court; which when understood, they joyfully entertained them, and quickly granted the Emperour's Request. King *Pepin* understanding this sudden, but joyful News, made great Preparations in his Court for entertaining of this noble Emperour: All things being in readiness, King *Pepin*, with all his noble Train, went to meet *Alexander*, Emperour of *Constantinople*; whom, when they met, they entertain'd with great Joy, and conducted him to the Court of *France*, where fair *Bellisant* was, and she entertain'd him with no less Joy than her Mother had done before; and there they spent their time in Joy and Triumph. This Marriage being once publickly known among all the Inhabitants,

Joy

joy began to shew forth it self on every side, for such a happy Day, wherein such good Alliance was knit between the Emperor *Alexander*, and King *Pepin*, that Triumphs began in every place, against the Nuptial-days appearance: When the time appointed came, these Two were espoused in all Honour fitting for their Estates, and Largeness shewed it on every side. This Marriage-feast endured long; but at last, being ended, the Emperor (assisted with all his worthy Train) made Preparation to take their Leave of his new Brother-in-law, and take their Way towards *Constantinople*, with his fair Empress *Bellisant*: Being thus all mounted on Horse-back, King *Pepin* also set forward with his Brother, to bring him on his Way, royally attended on every side, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court; and they that could not find Legs to go, found Eyes to weep for the Departure of their fair Lady and Mistress, the new Empress. These mighty Princes came near unto a Port of the Sea, whereat they must needs part; there taking leave of each other, they were forced to render more Thanks in Tears than Words, the which I am not able to express: But above all the Emperor yielded to King *Pepin* worthy Thanks for his quick, sudden, and generous Consent, in giving to him his fair Sister *Bellisant*, and with so frank and free a Heart to yield him Good-will. At which words of the Emperor unto King *Pepin*, the King presently embraced him in his Arms; saying, Fair Sir, and my right loving Lord and Brother, I have not received you according as your State required, nor with such Triumphs and Magnificence as became me, but in that you have so graciously accepted my small Power, I hold my self content in that I have done, but not that I should have done; and therefore there belongeth small Thanks to me; but from me innumerable, in that you have been pleased to accept of my Sister for your Wife; whereby (I trust) long Friendship shall be continued betwixt us: In token whereof, I take Witness of all that are here present, that my Body, my Realm, my Goods, and all the Powers that I can raise in *France*, to adventure for your Safety and Succour all the Days of my Life. King *Pepin* being now departed from the Emperor, turned himself to his Sister, and in this manner takes his Leave; Fair Sister (quoth he) think no longer of this Country of *France*, wherein you have spent your Infant-days, but remember that you are removed to a Country of better Conditions: Also let your Behaviour be such, that I, the rest of your Friends, and the whole Company of all the Peers may have Honour and Joy in you. Again, as the Country where you now do go is strange unto you, so be you governed by the modest Ladies of the Land, and give no ear to wicked Counsel, or to such as would move you to Disloyalty: For you are the Creature that I

have always dearest loved in all the World ; wherefore, if I should hear Tydings other than good from you, or of you, it would be the only Cause to take away my Life. After this, he gave unto his Sister many worthy Gifts, and so embracing and kissing her, with weeping Eyes, he left her to the Mercy of the Waves. The young Lady, whose Heart being overcharged betwixt Joy and Fear, was not able to answer a Word ; and what with Tears and Sighs, the Passage of her Tongue was utterly stopt. Then all the Lords and Ladies took their Leave of each other, at which was let fall many a brinish Tear, as well on their parts of *France*, as they also that were to go for *Constantinople* ; but especially for the departure of the fair Lady *Bellissant*. All Duties of Love being ended, King *Pepin* returned into *France*, and the Emperor by this time, mounted upon the Seas, had Wind and Water at such Will and Pleasure, that within short space, he with all his Train, arrived with safety at *Constantinople* ; where, at their Landing, they were all received with great Joy, Honour and Triumph ; all which were needless to recount. But mark what hapned, not long after these Joys and Triumphs were clean extinguished, that were made for the Lady *Bellissant*, in place whereof, nothing but Mournings, Lamentations, and Tears were placed, and all for the poor Lady, which by Treason and false Accusations was cast out and banished, as hereafter more at large you shall perceive.

Chap. II. *How the Arch-priest of Constantinople betrayed the Emperor, his Lord and Master, in making Love to fair Bellissant, the Empress ; and what Evil followed thereupon. The Arch-priest having received a Repulse of Bellissant, to save his own Honour, practised Treason against the Innocent Lady.*

IN *Constantinople* lived an Arch-priest, in whom the Emperour put such Trust, and loved so fervently, that he bestowed upon him great Riches and Possessions, and committed all his Bosom-thoughts unto his Secrecy : And in the End made him sole Governour and Commander over all his House ; as also he was the Emperor's principal Confessor, and one of his greatest Favourites, for which he afterwards had many a sorrowful Heart. The Bishop forgetting all the Emperor's Favours, and great Honours done unto him, being intangled and overcome with the Beauty of the new Empress, which excelled all mortal Creatures, inordinate Lust prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his way, save only fit Time and Opportunity to settle this his Determination : At last it chanced, that he espied her all alone, sitting solitarily in her Chamber, which this Arch-priest well observing, he came in and sat down by her : At last he began to behold her with

a smiling and jesting Countenance, of all which the Lady mistrusted nothing, for that she very well remembred his Greatness with the Emperor, and his familiarity in the House; and she never so much as once dream'd or thought such an evil Thought, as that he thereby would colour so filthy an Act, as to motion her to Dishonour, especially towards the Emperor his worthy Lord and Master, who so dearly esteemed of him, and so much affected him. But there is never more Danger like to ensue, than when one of the same House intendeth Treason. But at the last, after many Gestures of Impurity, and sitting still by this worthy and vertuous Lady, he began to utter his lascivious Thoughts on this manner.

Right dear and Sovereign Lady (said he) I am your Servant and Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your Ears, but rather set them wide open to hear my rude words, especially, for that I am burnt up in Affection towards your fair Person, and for whose Love I have suffered intolerable Torments in my fiery Bosom: Know therefore (my redoubted Lady) that the Beauty of your admirable Person, and the supernal Form wherewith you are framed and composed, hath even ravished my Spirits, broken my Heart, split my whole Senses in sunder, and quite bereft me of all Rest, both by Night and Day, and only with doting on your peerless Beauty. Again (fair Lady) my Meat, Drink, Manners, yea, and my very Countenance; insomuch that only my Request and Prayers unto the Gods is even this, that they would so enchant that Heart of yours, that you would at length give consent unto me, your Vassel, that I might not only serve you, but also delight you in all those Pleasures you are ordained unto. If, Lady, you refuse me, and cast me off, denying these my unrestless Thoughts (than which nothing will sooner cut my Heart in sunder) I can look for nothing but present Death, and rather covet therein to be locked fast, as in a Prison, than receive a Denial from those your fair Lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you are renowned in all the Gifts of Nature: Fair, Amiable, Courteous, Gentle, and also Youthful; be not then the Cause that I should determine my Life by losing your Love, but rather grant what I desire, and thereby make me for ever yours in hearty Affection. But, fair Lady, happily you will urge, How dare you to offend the Gods in this unlawful Act? To this, fair Lady, I answer, I am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon Earth, and therefore it wholly rests in my Power to absolve you of your Sins, and enjoyn your Penance; which, trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but very easie, so you grant me Love.

These Speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto, out of a grave and prudent Carriage, made unto this perjur'd Priest, this excellent Reprehen-

sion, and Answer : Ah ! thou false, unjust, disloyal, and devilish *Priest*, stain to all thy Profession : How dar'st thou once open thy perjur'd Mouth to such a mass of Villanies, as thereon may ensue ? First, as I may say, against the Sacred Order. Secondly, but most principally, against the Majesty of that Emperor that ever nourished thee in the Bond of tender Compassion and Love, and hath raised thee to great Dignities, far unfit for such a Devil incarnate : And from whom may justly proceed the Sentence of Condemnation, both on thee and me, if he should but understand thy lascivious and wicked Practises. Thou (I say) Devil, and worse than Devil, thou that shouldest be unto me Instruction, and also a Guide to my Life and Conversation ; in this thou goest about my utter Ruin and Destruction, by thy evil Conditions, even beyond that good Expectation which the Emperor trusteth to be in thee : O never grant (O ye Gods) that the Blood of *France*, from whence I am descended, nor the Emperor, my loving Lord, should be so dishonoured either by me in my Body, or through my privy in any other manner. O false accursed Man, behold whereunto thou wouldest deliver me : First unto the utter Ruin and Spoil of mine Honour ; next, shut up my Body in unremoveable Shame for ever among Men ; and lastly, bring my Soul into the Jaws of Death and the Devil. Let fall, I say, all these thy vile and devilish Provocations to Lust, and leave for ever hereafter to sollicit me, or any other vertuous Creature in this manner ; which if thou further prosecute unto me, then can'st thou look for nothing but a shameful downfal, and a most damnable Death. Therefore with this Answer depart, and see that ye Attempt me no more.

This angry Farewel of the worthy Empress, stung the Priest at the very Heart, but at that time durst make no further Reply unto the fair Lady concerning Love ; but as a Man all composed of Rage and great Fury, he then departed discontent, at this his most unfortunate and unhappy Chance. At the last, when he could no longer hold, he excused himself unto the Lady, craving Pardon for these his bold, sawcy, and rash Follies committed, but yet could find no Remedy to restore his Honour. Thus being sore troubled in Mind, divers and sundry Ways he resolved what to do upon Revenge against this Innocent, which he accordingly effected by Treason against the Lady : And seeing the Emperor knew nothing of this Matter from the Empress *Bellisant*, how the Arch-priest would have enticed her to Dishonour, and would have drawn her to Disloyalty to the Emperor, but he could not ; therefore he began to accuse her unto the Emperor for divers Crimes : The Arch-priest having now begun to set abroad his devilish Practises, began to think him how he might effect what he had determined, and also pre-

preserve the Reputation of his former Honours which the Emperor had bestowed upon him, whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly, under the Cloak of Dissimulation, bear fair Weather towards the Emperor, as also seemed to shew how great Care he had of his Preservation, and to make known his Loyalty and watchful Care that he had towards the Welfare of his Estate and Person: So it befel, that on a Day when he espied a fit Opportunity, and taking the Emperor all alone, he began to break with him on this manner.

Right High and Mighty Emperor, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount and highly esteem of the many and innumerable Favours, and great Kindness which I have always received from your mighty Highness: Wherefore, as Duty doth always bind me, I am ever most watchful over the Passages of your Estate, in which I now stand by you appointed; but especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all other: Therefore it is my Duty, to bewray unto you all those Carriages that any way concern your High and Mighty Person; wherefore I beseech your Highness to give Ear to that which I shall now disclose unto you, for I had rather suffer all the Torments of Death, than for to hide any thing from you; and the rather, for that it nearly toucheth your Person and Honour: O Emperor! thus it is, *Bellisant*, your Wife, and Sister to the King of *France*, she whom you have advanced to this State and Dignity, faileth in the Duty and Loyalty which she oweth unto her Dread Lord; for she wandreth in her Love, giveth that unto another which is proper only to your self: To name the Person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a sacred Priest, and may not seek the Blood of any Man; but yet know for certain, that by the way of Confession I came unto the Light thereof, whereof I neither ought nor will bewray the Name of him that thus usurps your Bed: But let it suffice, there is not a more unclean and lascivious Woman liveth in your Court or Kingdom, whereby your Life is in danger, your Honour defamed, and my Duty towards you approved by what I have told you. My Advice therefore is, to be wary of your Person, and Correct this her Folly, but yet mildly and wisely, always with the Preservation of your Honour. For will it not be a great Shame among the Princes of the Earth, that you, having taken a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her Beauty is incomparable, her Nobleness and Wisdom is not to be outshined by any earthly Lady, and she to prove a Whore? And what worse is, one who daily desireth your Death; which grieves my Heart to think upon.

The Emperor having heard this long Accusation, little mistrusted the Treachery of this Arch-priest, and gave Credit to all his fair but false Words, and therewith he became extream pensive and sad: That his Trust in her beautilous Love had been thus deceived. At last, having many Days in several Places uttered forth many discontented Gestures, Words and Sighs, and many grievous Acclamations, even in the Imperial Pallace, he gave Rest a while unto his discontented Passions; but wakened Revenge to wait upon a fitter Opportunity. And upon a Day, entering into the Chamber of his fair Lady *Bellisant*, without speaking any Word to her at all, in a most fierce, rude, and unmannerly Order, took his Lady by the Head, and pulling her by the Hair, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the Ground in such a horrid manner, that the Blood besmear'd her Face in most inhumane sort. She receiving from her Lord such unlook'd for Welcome, cried out in a lamentable manner, and as well as she was able, began to say, *Alas!* (my dear Lord) what moveth you to this unwelcome Outrage; I call all the Gods to witness I never did any thing in my Life either against your Honour or Life, or ever prostituted my Body to any Stranger's Love. The Emperor not being thus satisfied, replied, saying, *Thou Whore*, I am too well informed of thy Proceedings; and curst be the Day and Hour that ever I saw thy deceivable Face; and therewithal, without all Pitty, dashed her Head against the Ground, leaving her speechless, insomuch that all the Damsels, her Attendants, thought she had been quite bereft of Life. Upon this there arose up in the Court a most pittiful Outcry, which the Counsellors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance, at which Disaster, all amazed, some ran to take up the dead Body of the Emperess, others took upon them to speak to the Emperor, thinking thereby to stay the Fury of his undeserved Rage, whose Words unto him were as followeth: *Alas!* (dread Sovereign) what may be the Cause of this your unchain Passion, in delivering unto danger of Death, this so modest, chaste, and noble Lady? A Lady so beloved of all Degrees, and in whom was never seen the least spark of Dishonour, neither towards you, nor any in this Empire: Wherefore our Request unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong-conceived Anger against this harmless Lady. The Emperor nothing for all this relenting, answered, *Speak no more, for I know, I see, I hear how cunningly she hath deluded me; therefore move me no further, for I am fully purposed to deliver her over to Death; and he or they who shall hereunto gainsay, I shall make him partaker in Death with this wicked and disloyal Scoundrel.* These Words were no sooner uttered, but up rose

rose a worthy, wise, couragious and bold Baron, and spoke unto the Emperor after this manner, Right worthy Sir, I could wish you to be well advised before you proceed further against this Lady, who is your espoused Wife, Sister to a great King, namely, *Pepin*, King of *France*, who when he shall hear of this great Wrong done unto her, will out of a Couragious Heart, and a Brotherly Affection, muster up all his Men of War, and suddenly surprize all our Towns, Wives and Children, forgetting Mercy, and only pursuing Revenge upon us for these mercilefs and cruel Deeds unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other side, that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous so rudely to Smite and Wound her on this manner, wherein you have proceeded against her. The worthy Baron having thus ended his Advice, the Lady suddenly fell upon her Knees before the Emperor, and in Tears very submissive and lamentable thus she spake.

Alas ! my Lord, take pity on an innocent Lady, for I am so free from an evil Act, as I never so much as thought any Evil against your Person or Dignity : At least, my Lord, if your Compassion be quite distinct from pittying me, yet pity the Fruit of my Body, for I am great with Child by you, of which the Gods grant me a joyful Delivery. If nothing can appease your Anger towards me, then let my Body be imprison'd in some strong Tower till the time of my Delivery ; and then do with my Body what pleaseth you, so the Fruit of my Body may be kept safe. In this dolorous Passion she proceeded so far, That what with her Sighs and Tears following one another, it would have grieved the stoniest Heart that ever rested in the Bosom of the vilest Tyrant that ever reigned. All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperor, who was so wholly bewitched with the false and traiterous Accusation of the Arch-priest, that all Lenity set apart, he burst out in this manner, Thou false Strumpet, the Child thou goest withal is to me no Joy, but rather Dishonour ; for thy Disloyalty hath made such a Separation between us, that noting thy dissolute Life, thou hast made another Partner in my Love. The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the Rage of the Emperor, by a common Consent removed her out of his Presence into another Chamber, shewing unto her all the Favour they could, both in Action and Gesture, although her fair Face was sore deformed and besmeared with Blood. Having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were Attendants, fetched Water to wash her Face and did all they could to revive her ever dying Spirits. Being thus in another Chamber, in comes *Blandiman* her Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured manner, for very Pity the Water trickled down his Checks

and at the last began his Speech in this manner. Ah! Madam, I plainly see that you are Traiterously handled, and wish that the Gods would throw down their malignant Curses upon that Person that hath thus purchased your extream Miseries: But, gentle Lady, take Comfort unto you, and trust me, if you will be ruled by me, I will Conduct you back again into *France*, towards your Brother's, who gave me and my Service unto you, to attend you in all these Misfortunes; all which I will, to the utmost of my Power, undertake. Sweet Mistress, follow my Counsel, and free your self out of Danger; for be you assured, that if here you stay, the Emperor will prosecute Revenge upon you, and in the End bring you to a shameful Death. Unto this the sorrowful Lady made this Reply: Ah! *Blandiman*, I know thy faithful Service towards me; but yet if I should follow thy Advice, and steal out of this Court secretly, it would argue me Guilty of all that the Emperor throweth upon me, and thereby yield me Guilty of the Deed. Believe me, Servant, I had rather die all the Deaths the World can put upon me, than to bear the Blame of that wherein I am Innocent.

By this time the Emperor's Cholar was somewhat pacified, by Means of his Lords and Barons that attended, insomuch that he caused *Bellisant* to be quickly brought before him; when she was come, his Heart trembled and fretted for very Anger that he durst not put her to Death, fearing the great Puissance and Might of her Brother, King *Pepin*; and therefore burst forth into these Speeches: Thou false and accursed Woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in question; I take the Gods to witness, were it not for thy Brother's sake, the valiant *Pepin*, King of *France*, I would make thee Fry in the Fire, as an Example to all false Ladies; but, for his sake, I spare thy Life; stand forth and hear thy Judgment: I Banish thee out of my Country and Empire, expressly commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou be seen here any more, I assure thee thou shalt suffer Death in all extremity. Also I charge and command, that none of my Country dare be once so bold as to give Aid, or accompany you, save only your Servant *Blandiman*, whom you brought with you out of *France*. Go get thee presently out of my Sight, for thou shalt never more sleep in my Bosom. The Emperor having pronounced Sentance against her, the Empress *Bellisant*, accompanied with her Servant *Blandiman*, speedily hasted to Horse. Being thus mounted, and then passing through the fair City towards one of the Gates thereof, there met her People in great Multitudes, of Degrees, much lamenting the Loss of so fair a Lady, and so good an Empress. When she came to the utmost part, even ready to go out of the Gates of the City, there was heard such lamentable howl-

howling of mournful Voices, that the like before was never heard in the City of Constantinople. When she was out of the Walls of the City, and just entered into the wide Fields, she began to fall into a womanly Fit of bitter Weeping, to see how shameful and dishonourable she was handled causeless: Again, to think upon her Birth, and the Imperial Dignity from whence she was fallen, as also to account the Misfortunes wherein she was like to finish the rest of her Days, it drove her at last from Tears to utter her Grievs in these Words: *Alas! in what unhappy Hour was I born, to fall from so high an Estate to so low an Object of Poverty as I am now in? Woe is me the unhappiest amongst Women, now are all my Joys turn'd topsie-turvy, my Laughing is turn'd into Weeping, my Songs converted into Sighs; instead of Cloath of Gold, wherewith I was wont to be cloathed, now I am glad of all manner of mean Attire; my precious Stones of inestimable Value are taken from me, and Pearls of Tears stand over all my Garments. O ye Fields and Woods, to you I make my Moan, for other Company I have none, consider my Exile, and help to bewail my Misfortune: O would the Gods had pittied my Distress, and made me the poorest among Creatures, then had not Fortune given me so foul a Fall; at least, my poor Estate would never have grieved me: Wherefore doth the beautionous Sun send forth his Beams on a Wretch so miserable? Why doth the Earth bear such a Creature, that is composed of Calamities: It is not possible for my Tongue to tell out my Heart's Sorrow: O wretched Man (whatsoever thou art) that by thy wicked Treason hast brought me to this Downfal; I may well curse thee with bitterness of Heart, for by thee only am I made thus Unfortunate. Ah! my Brother, what shouldest thou do with such a woful Wight to thy Sister? It had been better I had never been Born, than that I should prove such a Stain to thy Kingly House. As she was thus complaining to her sacred Heart, the Anguish thereof struck her into a Swound as she sat on Horseback, and was like at that Instant to have fallen off her Horse, e'er her Servant could light and recover her; but he used all the speediest Means for her Recovery; at last, she coming unto her self again, he said unto her, *Alas! Madam, be not discomforted, neither let Dispair so far sieze upon you, but trust ye that the Gods will keep and defend you, for they are ready to aid and assist the Innocent.* Having thus spoken, he suddenly spied a Fountain, towards which he and his Lady took their way; and being come thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her over tyred Senses. Here at this Spring leave we the Lady and her 'Squire, and turn we now to the traiterous Arch-priest, who was the Cause of all these treacherous and evil Practises.*

Chap. III. *How the Arch-priest put on him the Habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress Bellifant, who was lately Banished. How Bellifant, in her Banishment was Delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were Valentine and Orson, and how she lost them.*

THE Arch-priest having now wrought the Banishment of fair Bellifant, thought within himself now he should surely accomplish his Desire. Wherefore in all hast, he changed his white Rocket into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto him a Sword; and being thus accoutred, he suddenly was mounted upon a milk white Steed, the fairest that could be had in all Constantinople: Being thus mounted, he made after her with all Expedition, enquiring of all he met which way the Lady Bellifant had taken; who gladly told him which way she had taken. After some few Hours riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest, and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was riding forward, casting his Eye aside, he presently espied the Lady with her Servant Blandiman, sitting by a Fountain full of Heaviness, lamenting her miserable Fortunes, Blandiman using all the means he could to comfort her. The false Priest from forth his Beaver, well perceived it to be the Lady; but by reason of his Disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch-priest, her Enemy; but coming nearer her, she soon descryed him, and being struck with a sudden Fear, speak thus to her Servant: *Alas!* (quoth she) *I well perceive this to be the false Arch-priest that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, lest he come to do me further Villany.* Lady (said Blandiman) banish Fear, for if he come after to do you further Harm, I will encounter him Body for Body, even as long as Life lasteth. By this time that they had ended their Speech to each other, the Arch-priest was ready to alight from his Horse to salute the Lady in all courteous Behaviour; and after he had made himself known unto her, he began to say unto her after this manner.

Right dear Lady, and our late honoured Empress, since then thy Case is so pitiful, as to suffer Banishment by Sentance given against thee by the Emperor, so it is, that if thou wilt give me Entertainment in thy Cave, accept me into thy Favour, and to grant me what I have long sought at thy Hands, It will bring it to pass, that the Emperor shall again recal thy Banishment, and make thy greatness of State shine more bright than ever before. Therefore advise you well; for I protest, what I offer to you is only tending to your Good and Advancement. Ab!! (quoth the Lady) thou disloyal and traitor.

traiterous Adversary, I have no Cause to bestow Love where my Life hath been put in jeopardy. It is only thou that hast wrought my Overthrow, and thou it is that makest me to spend the remnant of my Days in more Misery than ever Lady is able to endure. Lady (quoth he) utter no further such Curses against me, for I am come to you, not to vex or trouble you, but to heap upon you more Joys than ever you as yet in all your Life enjoyed. And in speaking these Words, he bended his Body to the Lady, thinking to have kissed her; but Blandiman perceiving his Intent, suddenly started between them, and gave the Arch-priest so mighty a Stroak, that he felled him to the Earth, and with the Violence of the Blow, broke out one of his Treeth: The Priest had no sooner recovered himself, but suddenly took him to his Sword, which Blandiman perceiving, took to him a Glave which he had about him; whereupon grew a sore and dangerous Fight between them: This Encounter lasted so long, that they were both wounded, but still they continued Fighting, till at last it chanced a Merchant came by that way, who, perceiving afar off their fierce Encounter, cryed out with a loud Voice in this manner: Lords (quoth he) leave off, and shew the Cause of your Variance, and I will endeavour to end this Controversie. Sir (quoth Blandiman, let us first try our Right by our Weapons, and afterwards we will be rul'd by Words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear Silence, but began to tell the Merchant, as followeth: Alas (quoth she) as you ever pityed Woman, pity my Case; for this Man whom here you see armed, is the false and traitorous Arch-priest, that hath followed me to rob me of mine Honour, and force me to this wicked and unsatiable Lust; also this is he that hath made a Separation between me and the Emperor, my Lord and Husband. The Merchant hearing her lamentable Tale, pityed her Misery, and began thus unto the Arch-priest, Sir Priest, leave off your Enterprize, and dare not so much as to touch this Innocent Lady; for if the Emperor did but understand this Villany, he would soon end thy Life in Infamy, as thou well deservest. As soon as the Arch-priest had heard his Speech, he forsook his Combat, and fled as fast as he could through the Wood, for fear of being further known, being prevented of his Purpose toward the Lady: Though he conveyed his Body out of sight, yet his Villanies were afterward disclosed. After his Departure the Lady was forced to stay still in the Wood all sorrowful, with her wounded Servant. The Merchant staid with them some little time, bewailing the hard hap of the Lady; yet comforted her, saying, Alas, Lady, I see that this Arch-priest hath falsly betrayed you, and brought you in Hatred with the Emperor; but I will promise you, that if

I live I will bewray all these Treacheries to the Emperor, and bring the Traitor to a shameful Death: And so, taking leave, I commend you to the Gods, wishing that in these Extremities you would be patient, and comfort your self in these your Sorrows: So with many Thanks for his Aid from Blandiman, the Merchant departed. The Merchant having left them, Blandiman set the Lady upon her Horse, and himself on his, so riding on together, they came unto a Lodging lying in their way, where they remained Eight Days, during which time her Servant was recovered of his Wounds, and then set forwards towards France; the Lady still sorrowful and Complaining in this manner: *Alas! Blandiman, what may my Brother and the Peers of France think of this, when they shall understand that I am expelled Greece for such a dishonourable Deed; and as a common Harlot, banished from the Emperor of Constantinople? Alas! I am perswaded that the King, my Brother, will easily believe that I am Guilty of the Deed, and in his Anger deliver me over to a shameful Death.* Lady (quoth he) be not thus discouraged, but trust in the Gods, who will revenge your Injury, and pay it home upon the Offenders Head. During the time of these Discourses, they had passed many Countries and Regions, till at last they came into France, and passing by Orleance, they took their way towards Paris, where King Pepin was accustomed to sojourn. So entering into a Forest near unto Orleance, there hapned new Miseries unto this Empress; of which more hereafter ensueth.

Bellisant (as before you heard) being with Child, was suddenly overtaken in the Forest; the time of her Delivery being come, caused her to forsake her Horse, and begin to complain to her Servant in this manner: *Alas, quoth she, Help! help! I say, to lay me down softly under yonder great Tree; and when I am laid, make hast and find me the Help of Women, wheresoever thou canst get any, for I can go no further, my Pains so much increaseth upon me.* Blandiman, her Servant, did as she commanded, and for that he knew not how to find the same place again, he set a special Mark, that he might the re-dier come thither again; and so betaking him to Horse, he rode forth swiftly to seek some Women to help this distressed Lady. He being gone, the Lady was left comfortless, all alone without Succour of any Creature, so that at last she was Delivered of Two fair Sons in the desolate Forrest: These Children were no sooner come into the World, but a fresh Misery, worse than all the rest that she had endured, happened to this Lady; for as she lay upon the Earth under the Tree, and her Two Infants by her, suddenly came to her a huge Bear,

Bear, most terrible to behold, and took up one of the Infants in her Mouth, and with great Pace hasted into the thickest of the Forrest: This strange and unlook'd for Accident, frighted the distressed Lady to the Soul, that she cryed out most lamentably, getting upon her Hands and



Feet, to hasten after the Bear, which was quickly got out of her sight. But, alas ! it little availed her to make any further Pursuit, for she never came unto the Sight of the Child, till by Miricle it was at length disclosed. So long wandred this Lady up and down from Place to Place, weeping and crying out for her Child, that being over-wearied with Travel, she fell into a great Sickness, insomuch that at last she was thereby near deprived of her Life, and immediately fell into a Swound upon the cold Earth, as if she had yielded up the Ghost. In this Extasie, leave we her, and now proceed to the other Child which she left under the Tree.

It hapned the same Day that her Brother, King *Pepin*, had taken his Journey from *Paris* (accompanied with divers great Lords and Barons) towards *Constantinople*, to visit his Sister *Bellisant*; and striking through

Or-

Orleanse, he made such hast, that he entered into the same Forrest, where his banished Sister was lately delivered of her Two Children ; but knowing nothing of what had hapned. Now as the King passed through this Forrest, he espied lying under a Tree alone, the other Son of *Bellisant*, which when he saw, he said unto his Attendants : My Lords, by the appointment of the Gods, see, I have here found a fair Encounter, even a Child. By the Gods, said the Lords, you say Truth. Why, said the King, take it up, and it shall be brought up at my Charge so long as it liveth, and it shall want no manner of Attendance, but be used as it were mine own : For if it lives until it comes to Man's Estate, I'll endow it with Lands and Possessions after the most noblest Manner. And therewith calling to one of his 'Squires, gave him the whole Care thereof, saying to him after this manner : Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to *Orleanse*, see it Baptized, provide a good Nurse for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto. The King little suspected that this Child was his Nephew. The 'Squire, as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to *Orleanse*, caused it to be Baptized, and gave it his own Name, called *Valentine*. After he sought out a Nurse for the Child, and gave it great Attendance, according to the King's Command. This done, the King proceeded on his Journey towards *Constantinople*, to see his lovely and beautious Sister *Bellisant* ; but e'er he could pass through the Forrest, he chanced to meet with *Blandiman*, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greatest Extremity of Child-birth : *Blandiman* espying the King, knew him, and suddenly alighted from his Horse, doing his Duty unto him ; the King perceiving it to be *Blandiman*, asked, What good News from *Constantinople* ? And above the rest, how doth our Sister *Bellisant* ? *Blandiman* answered, Most Gracious Sovereign, I bring you but little Tydings, yet those I bring are bitter and sharp : For, amongst the rest, I must tell you strange News of your loving Sister, and how she fares : Wherefore, so it is, that by force of Treason, and false suggestion of the cursed Arch-priest of *Constantinople*, your Sister is banished out of the Emperor's Court and Dominions ; and but for the great Mercy of the Lords of the Emperor's Court and others, she had been publicly put to Death, and Burnt to Ashes in the sight of all the People. King *Pope* having heard the lamentable Relation of *Blandiman's* Report, being exceeding outrageous and fierce in Anger, and yet sorrowful wisthal, brake out in Speech most bitterly against her on this manner : Now, by the Gods, quoth he, I hold the Emperor no upright Judge, in that he spared the Life of my Sister : For I swear, that

if I had her here now in my Possession, I would not rest, till by Death I had made her an Example to all false Ladies while the World endureth. And therewithal, commanded all his Train of Lords, and others, to stay their Journey, and make their return back again to *Paris*; for the grievous Offences of my Sister here stays my Journey; and so he departed, without asking any more Questions, but turning his Horse's Head, sorrow overcame his Courage, and at last made him break forth into these words: Ha! (quoth he) how many Men are deceived in Women? Now am I utterly prevented of all my Purposes, for my only Hope rested in the Modesty of my Sister *Bellifant*; yea, and in her stood all my Joys and Pleasure: Again, to have had the Emperor *Alexander* still my Brother, and fast Fried at all Affaies, and in all my Necessities was my only Hope and Joy of Heart; and now, behold, by her I'm disappointed, defamed, and shut out into eternal Dishonour. And so in that Distrust and Melancholly, King *Pepin* returned towards *Orleance*. When *Blandiman* perceived the Courage of the King to be thus daunted, he durst relate no further News of the Lady *Bellifant*; but leaving the King, took his way towards the Tree where he lately left her in great Pain of Child-birth; being come thither, he sought her every where, but could hear no Tydings of her; wherefore being sorrowful, he knew not what way to take. Being in this Extasie, at last he tyed his Horse to a Thorn Tree, and began to make a closer Search than before; wherein he was so vigilant, that anon he espied her, finding her flat upon the Earth, in a manner speechless, for very Grief of Heart she had lost her Child which the Bear had bore away from her. *Blandiman* being glad that now at last he had found her, kindly embraced her, and taking her up in his Arms from the cold Earth, set her upon her Feet, and began thus unto her: Alas! dear Lady and Mistress, how hapned you to stray thus far from the place I left you in?

The Lady looking upon him with a ghastly Countenance, replied thus, Ah! *Blandiman*, my Dolours and Distresses daily encrease upon me; for thou wert no sooner gone to get me the help of some Women-kind, but I being Delivered of two Babes, a ravenous Bear from the Forrest assailed me, and bare away one of them; I although weak, making what poor shift I was able, followed that ravenous Beast, thinking by a strong Hand to have recovered again my Loss, but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor, wanting my Strength, recover back again to the Tree, where I left my other Infant. Lady, quoth he, the other Infant! Why, I myself but lately came from the Tree, and I am well assured that there lay no Infant there, nor thereabout. How, (quoth the Lady) no Child under

der the Tree? With these words she was so inwardly wounded, that she fell down into a Swoond; which *Blandiman* espying, saved her in what he could, and fell into brinish Tears for Sorrow, to see his Lady so extreemly plunged and overwhelmed, and at last led her towards the Tree where she had left the Child; but when she saw the other Child also gone, think then what dolour of Heart the poor Lady endured; in the midst of all which Sorrows she thus bespake: Ah! (quoth she) can there be in the World a more desolate Wretch? on every side encompassed with Grief, yea, and all unsupportable Sorrows. But oh my Emperor thou art the Cause, and hast been the only Means to deliver me over even to Death, and that wrongfully, without Cause on my part, and only by deceiveable Counsel hast thou bereft me of thy Company; but here I call all the Gods to witness, that I was never faulty to thee in my Body, nor disobedient to thee in any Point; wherefore, once again I am forced to cry out for Vengeance upon the Offender's Head, whosoever: First, for my Disgrace; next for my Banishment; and now lastly, for the Loss of my Two Babes, issued from the Blood-royal of the Emperor of *Constantinople*. But seeing all these Miseries have been tryed themselves upon my very Heart, come Death and finish what Sorrows do but prolong. All this while *Blandiman* was Ear-witness of all these piteous Complaints, insomuch that he grew even weary of her Wailing, and in the best manner he could, comforted her dying Spirits, by falling to intreat her, that she would somewhat give over moaning, and betake her self to her Feet; whereupon she gave consent. He accompanied her with a Woman he had brought with him into a neighbouring Village, whereas they lodged and nourished her till she had partly recovered her Strength, and in some measure forgotten the depth of her Miseries. *Blandiman* began to break with his Lady on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my Chance in looking you in the Woods to light upon your Brother, *King Pepin*, who demanded of me what Tydings? But his Brows were bent, and full of Anger against you; wherefore my Counsel is, that you make not towards him, for by that Countenance I well perceive, you shall have but slender Welcome: For upon further Questions demanded, and answered, so soon as he heard me tell that the Emperor had exiled you, he lightly gave Credit that yours was the Fault, and therefore he lays all the Blame on you. O! (quoth the Lady) now what I most feared is come to pass; and I well perceive that I am beset with Adversaries on every side: Well, be it as it may be, the Emperor hath exiled me without Cause: What then shall I do? I will never return again to *Paris*, but take my Way into some remote Land, where my Body with my Faults shall be smothered;

thered ; for my Brother's Anger is grown so great, that he could willingly deliver me over to Death ; therefore it is better to flye and save my Life, than fall into the Fury of so angry a Brother. This doleful Speech she delivered in Tears, which *Blandiman* perceiving, said unto her, Lady, leave off your Tears, for be assured of my faithful Fidelity ; and here I offer my self, Life, and all to be at your Service, go whither you please. Why then (quoth the Lady) since thou art so resolute, let us resolve upon some strange Adventure ; and therewithal passed forth to expose themselves to future Dangers, where now we shall be forced to leave them with sorrowful Hearts, and return again to say something of the Bear that carried away one of the Children.

Chap. IV. *Of the Bear that bore away one of the Children.*

THE Bear (as you have heard before) that carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no Violence, but bare it unto her Cave, which was dark and obscure : In this Cave the old Bear had Four young ones, amongst whom she laid the Child to be devoured, but mark the Chance, and you shall find it at last miraculous ; for all this while the young Bears did it no harm, but with their rough Paws stroaked it softly. The old Bear perceiving they did not devour it, shewed a Bearish kind of Favour toward it ; insomuch, that she kept it and gave it Suck among her young ones, the space of one whole Year. This Child, by reason of the Nourishment it received, became rough all over like a Beast ; and as he grew in Strength, began to range up and down the Woods, and when he met with other Beasts would smite them, and got such mastery over them, that they began to shun the place wherein he came, he was so extream fierce amongst them : And in this Beast-like Estate passed he the term of Fifteen Years, growing up to such Strength, that scarce any Man or Beast in the Forrest durst stir abroad, fearing to fall into his Hands, lest he should put them to death, and after eat their Flesh, more like unto a ravenous wild Beast than any humane Creature : His Name was call'd *Orson*, because a Bear had been his Nurse, and also was grown rough like a Bear. This Bear-man lived so long in the Forrest, that none (were they never so hardy) durst abide his Presence : The Renown of this wild Man grew so great, and spread so far abroad over all the Realm of *France*, that they of the Country round about chased and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he never feared Weapons or Engines, but passed through them all, snapping them in pieces : All this time he abode in the Forrest, you must understand he neither wore Garment, nor had any kind of Speech.

Here we leave the wild Man in the Forrest, and look a little what became of the Lady *Bellifant* and her Servant *Blandiman*; and we shall suddenly find them wandering and travelling through divers Lands and Countries; the Lady ever remembring and bewailing the loss of her two Children, wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in safety. But in the midst of her sorrowful Wishes, yet passed on their weary Journey, sometimes by Sea, sometimes by Land, till at length she came to a Port in *Portugal*, on the which did stand an invincible Castle, kept by a Gyant called *Ferragus*, so great, and of such Puissance, that there was not a Horse to be found could bear the living Trunk of this Giant. It so hapned at this Castle, that every Ship that passed by this Port was to pay Tribute to this Giant, which he himself did daily come on board to receive. At length he came into the Ship wherein the Lady *Bellifant* and her 'Squire had passed, (for she was laden with all manner of rich Merchandize) so casting his Eyes about, he espied *Bellifant*, which he kindly took by the Hand, and led her into the Castle to his Wife (for he was Married to a beautiful Lady) *Blandiman* followed his Lady also, fearing the Giant, but he behaved himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any Violence, but presented her to his Wife, who received her gladly, and had great Joy at the gracious Presence of so beautiful a Lady. The Giant having charged his Wife to use her and *Blandiman* her 'Squire honourably. During her abode in the Castle, she would often shed Tears, when she thought of the loss of her two Children; which the Lady of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best manner she could, and ever placed her near her own Person, for the Joy and Pleasure that she ever took in her Company. Within this Castle she tarried a long time, and here we must leave her, and now we will return back again to tell you something of the Emperor of *Constantinople* and the false Arch-priest.

Chap. V. *How, by the Counsel of the Arch-priest, new Customs and Taxations were raised through the City of Constantinople; and how the Treason came to light. How the Emperor, by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King Pepin, to see the Combat fought between the Arch-priest and the Merchant.*

THE Emperor having shamefully expelled *Bellifant* his Wife, oftentimes repented him of the Fact: But by the cursed Counsel of the Arch-priest, unto whose Words he gave such Credit continually, that what he spake was an Oracle in the Ears of the said Emperor, insomuch, that he continually heaped

heaped new Honours upon that traiterous Priest, advancing him even above the highest in the Empire; and whatsoever he commanded was effected. At last, having gotten all Power and Authority in his Hands, he began to enhance the Customs and Taxes of the City of *Constantinople*; which Exactions of his, against all Reason, struck even to the very Hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the residue of these his forced Impositions it hapned, that according to their yearly Customs, there was held a great Mart in the City, which falls about the Month of *September*: Hereunto resorted many People for divers Occasions, especially Merchants. The Fair or Mart-day being come, the Emperor gave the Charge thereof unto this Arch-priest, who accordingly provided himself, and to the same purpose, armed Two Hundred Men to guard his own Person: Being thus accompanied, he took his way into the City, to effect this new Charge which the Emperor had bestowed on him. It chanced so, that among the rest of those that sold Wares, the Merchant was there present, of whom you have heard before, namely, he that came riding by the Way where *Blandiman* (the distressed Lady *Bellifant's* Esq;) and the treacherous Arch-priest was fighting. The Arch-priest perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful, least all his Villany should come to light. The Presence of the Merchant much troubled the Arch-Priest, insomuch that he wished (if it were possible) his death, and would assuredly have effected the same, by the Authority that he now had in his Hands; but still he feared some great Tumult would arise thereby. Now mark what followed: The Merchant, among the rest, was richly furnished with costly Wares; as Cloath of Gold, Silver, Silk, &c. Whereby he received great Wealth, and took more Money than any Five Merchants beside: The Fair being ended, the Arch-priest sent forth his Officers to demand and receive his accustomed Duties, due upon the Sale of those Merchandizes: One Officer came unto the Merchant and said, Sir, you must pay Ten Pence on every Pound that you have taken, for so it is ordained by the Great Officer to whom it belongs. The Merchant hereat being angry, said, Cursed be that disloyal Arch-priest, for he is the only Cause of these new raised Exactions: It had been good for all Men if he had long since had his Desert, and with Shame and Infamy had ended his Days. At which reproachful words against the Arch-priest, the Officer took his Staff and smote the Merchant on the Head, that presently the Blood gushed out: Then the Merchant feeling the Blood about his Ears, drew his Sword, and struck so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his Feet for dead. Upon this arose a great Rout throughout the Fair, insomuch

that the rest of the Officers coming up to help their Fellow, took the Merchant, and brought him before the Arch-priest: The Arch-priest glad of this Opportunity would suddenly have put him to Death; but the Merchant appealed to Justice, to have his Cause tryed by the Law. The Arch-priest, fearing the People, sent him away to the Emperor, for nothing could satisfie him but his Life: But mark, in seeking the Life of the Merchant, he purchased his own Death, as hereafter followeth. The Arch-priest caused the Merchant to be brought into the Emperor's Palace, whereas he in Person sat as Judge. The Emperor being set, the Arch-priest brought his Advocate to plead his Cause, which was to this Effect: That the Merchant had committed Murther, and also had spoken opprobrious Words against the said Arch-priest. The Advocate having ended his Accusation, the Merchant suddenly fell on his Knees before the Emperor, and said, Mighty and most excellent Prince, out of your Benignity, give me but Audience to be heard before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a Matter of so great Importance, that it touches your Person even in the highest degree of Treason. Say on, said the Emperor. Mighty Emperor, and my Lords all, I would advise you to make fast the Gates round about your Palace, that none depart from this place. The Emperor did as he requested, Then said the Merchant with a loud Voice, Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the Honour of the Emperor, and the triumphant Reign of his Person, attend my Words; the time is come that the Treason of the cursed Arch-priest will now be revealed and come to light: Then thus, great Emperor, this is that cursed Man, whom you have ever nourished and brought to great Honour, who hath deceived your Trust; for he it is that hath wrought all the Discord betwixt you and your vertuous Lady, whom you have banished, both from your Bed, Court, and Country, and by whom you have received more Dishonour than ever he reaped Honour from you; For it had been his part most of any, to have nourished and advanced your Renown, and to have preserved your Honour; but contrary, he hath made my dread Lord Infamous, by these his wicked Projects, and brought upon you great Scandal among all Nations; for he secretly, and underhand, made Love to the Empress, but she denied him, the which he perceiving, that there was no likelihood to accomplish his Desire, it drove him into a Thousand Fears, lest his disloyal Act should come to light, and therefore devised to falsifie unto your Ears, her faithful Love unto your Bed. Of all which his false Accusations, I say here before you, and all your Lords and Barons, that he lieth like a Traitor, and for the more Approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the

the Truth of what these Eyes of mine were Witnesses : It so hapned on a Day, after the Banishment of the Empress, as I was riding about my Affairs, I chanced to Travel thro' a Wood ; at last, passing along the Way, I found this treacherous Priest, transformed out of the Habit of his Priesthood, into the Shape of a Knight, even armed at all points, ready for Combat with the Enemy. Drawing nearer and nearer, I did behold him in Fight with another Man unarmed, which at last I found to be *Blandiman*, Squire to the banished Lady, who conducted her in the time of her Exile. I perceiving they encounter'd one another so fiercely, I began to call unto them to give over their direful Fight ; but they little regarded what I said. I did perceive the Lady pitiously weeping, and at last said unto me thus : Gentle Merchant, and kind Friend, lend me thy Aid against this treacherous Arch-priest, that seeketh by Force to rob me of my Honour. This is he, and only he, by whom I am banished from my Emperor's Bed and Country. With that I put Spurs to my Horse, and ran between them to separate them ; which the Arch-priest perceiving, suddenly fled into the Wood, being fully assured I had the Knowledge who he was. Noble Emperor, it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but I durst not open my Mouth unto you, for fear his Greatness would have outswayed my Truth, and so have brought my self to an untimely Death.

The Emperor having heard this Tale, sighed, and at last fell into Tears, in which Tears he turned him to the Arch-priest, relating his Disloyalty in this manner : Ah ! thou false Servant, quoth he, have I ever studied to do the Honour, and exalt thee to high Dignities, and hast thou requited all my Love and Trust with Disloyalty and Treasons ? Well, I have seen now what I ever mistrusted, thou hast made me of all Men most unhappy ; but it is not so much thy Fault as mine own ; thy Treason hath bewitched me : In an evil Hour I gave Credit to thy false speaking Tongue, and thereby deserve to carry the Brand of my own Folly. The Arch-priest hearing the Emperor thus distempered, began to entreat his Highness not to be so impatient, neither to give Credit to this slanderous Tale that the Merchant had commenced against him : For, quoth he, he belyeth me, and I am no way guilty of that wherewith he accuseth me. Thou liest falsely, quoth the Merchant, thou canst not excuse thy self in what I have charged thee withal : And if thou stand still in the Denial, I challenge thee by the single Combat to maintain the Truth, and try my Quarrel : And hereunto I throw down my Gage, and withal tender my Body thereunto, for to make good what I have spoken : And more than that, e'er Night shut in, I will deliver thy Body to Death, or yield my self vanquished.

ed. The Emperor seeing the Merchant so resolute, and to stand the Trial of the Combate, he said, Arch-priest, it is time that either thou quit thy self by answering this Challenge, or to yield thy self Guilty of what hath been laid to thy Charge. The Arch-priest replied on this manner, Mighty Emperor, I must let you understand, that to answer the Merchant's Challenge, or take up Arms, is contrary to my Place and Calling, for I am a sacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay, quoth the Emperor, in this Case no Excuse is to be admitted; but you must either Fight, or yield your self a Traytor to our Crown and Dignity. At these Words the Arch-priest was somewhat troubled in Mind, yet at last he was fain to accept the Combate, because the Emperor charged him so deeply; and besides, he could have no Excuse admitted. So the Emperor commanded them both to safe keeping till such time he had sent Letters to King *Pepin* of *France*; but in conclusion the Traytor had his Desert, as hereafter followeth.

The Day of the Combate being appointed, and the Field prepared, Tydings came to the Emperor, that King *Pepin* was come to *Rome*, to the aid of the Pope against the Infidels. The Emperor hearing thereof, by the grave Counsel of the Lords, dispatched Ambassadors thither, with command to bring King *Pepin* to *Constantinople*, meaning thereby to make him an Eye-witness of these Contentions, and of the Cause of this Combate, which was to prove the Arch-priest a Traitor, and also to hold the Emperor excused, in that he had by his false Accusations banished his Empress. The Ambassadors thus dispatched, you must imagine, that after long Travel at last they came to *Rome*, whereas they found King *Pepin*, as before was told them: King *Pepin* having heard of their coming, gave them Entertainment appertaining to their several Degrees; all which being done, the Ambassadors thus spake: Great Lord, we present these Letters from *Alexander*, your Brother, Emperor of *Constantinople*, our Lord and Master, of which we entreat a speedy Answer. King *Pepin* took the Letters graciously, and read them; and having thoroughly considered the Contents, with a loud Voice, he said, My Lords, by the Gods, here's much matter of Tydings, and also of as great Admiration; the Emperor greets me well, and sends me word, that my Sister *Bellissant*, his betrothed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully banished, and that by reason of a false Arch-priest, unto whom he gave too much trust; which Priest, for these his treasonable Facts, is accused by a Merchant; and for Tryal of the Truth of this his Accusation, will put himself in jeopardy of Life, by single Combate in open Field, Body to Body, with this treacherous Arch-priest. Now it is
so

so fallen out, that the Day and Place is ready for the Trial of his Fact, whereby I shall be fully satisfied, whither my Sister hath been guilty of that where-with she hath been charged, and most shamefully cast forth into Banishment: Upon all which, I vow by my Crown and Dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered this Indignity without just Cause, that I will be avenged against him in the extreamest manner that War can thunder forth against him. Having ended his Speech unto his Lords in presence of the Ambassadors, he commanded with speed, that every Man should address himself to accompany him to *Constantinople*, to behold the manner of this Fight between the Merchant and the Arch-priest. The Day of his Departure from *Rome* being come, he takes his way towards *Constantinople*, where, after some few Days of Travel, he safely arrived. The Emperor hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to ring, and made Triumph to welcome him, for all were filled with Joy at his approach. The Emperor mounted on Horse-back, richly accompanied, marched out of the City to meet his Brother, King *Pepin*. At last they met; but the Emperor overcome with Sorrow and Tears at the remembrance of *Bellissant*, could not utter a Word. On the other side, *Pepin* being fiercely angered at what had hapned to his Sister, gave no respect to the Emperor's Tears, but proudly began to gird him in this manner: Emperor, quoth he, leave off your Lamentations, and shake off these Weeds of Sorrow that you seem to weep for my Sister; for he that hath a Harlot to his Wife, I account him mad to grieve at her Misbehaviour; and since my Sister hath proved such a one, let her go and take care of her self, she is not worthy of so much as one Tear from such an Eye of Majesty.

Nay, nay, said the Emperor, speak not Evil against your Sister, for I am now fully perswaded she is composed of all Virtue and Honesty, and that against all Equity I have banished her out of my Country. Think you so now? quoth King *Pepin*, then are you worthy of a double shame, and you do bewray unto the World your Weakness, and what great Foolishness remains in you, when by the Report of one Man, and that a Traytor too, you would with such Rigour proceed against an innocent Lady, and so suddenly, like a common Harlot, throw her out into Banishment, Shame, and Dishonour, being of the Blood Royal of *France*. The Emperor hearing the King to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful, and said unto him in this manner: Alas! my Lord, do not thus follow me with Wrath and Anger, but rather turn your Tongue upon some milder saying, for to that Intent have I sent for you, that your own Eyes may be Witness of the Truth. 'Tis true, quoth King *Pepin*, but it is all too late what now you say,
for

say, for you have delivered over my Sister to the World's Infamy, and that more is, even to Banishment; and, for ought I know, to Death it self, for I know not whether I shall ever behold her Face again or not: Fie, fie, that you being so great a Person, should be so affectionately born away, to give such sudden Judgment against the Innocent; I do confess, one may commit a foul and dishonourable Act, but Repentance is able to make amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and Renown: For that once lost, whether it be right or wrong, it is never again possible to be recovered. Again, how little you have esteemed of the Honour of my Kingly Office, judge you, when first without deliberation, and next without any Knowledge given me, you have proceeded so against my Sister? I make it plain against you, that Envy towards her and me was the only Cause of these false and unjust Wrongs done against us. Whilst these Words passed betwixt them, they were now entered *Constantinople*, where with great Joy and Gladness they were received of the Inhabitants. The Emperor would have had King *Pepin* to have lodged with him in his Palace, but the King denied, and caused his Train to lodge within the City, and he himself also. Then the Emperor caused many Gifts and Presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: For King *Pepin* thought of nothing but the Dishonour unto his Sister, and that the rather, for the whole City accounting her the fairest, and most vertuous, and the chastest Lady in all the World, and that by Injustice and Treason she was banished.

Chap. VI. *How the Merchant and High-priest Encountred at the Place appointed, about the Clearing the Lady Bellisant, and what a glorious Victory did betide the Merchant. How King Pepin, after the Combate, returned into France; and after sailed to Rome, to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.*

NOW was the Day appointed come for the Combate between the Arch-priest and the Merchant; wherefore every thing was made in readiness according to the Command of the Emperor. At last there came both the Combatants into the Field, and presented themselves before the Emperor. Being both before the Emperor, his Attendants, Knights, and others, and the Arch-priest armed in a most sumptuous Armour of Proof, all imboss'd with Gold and Pearl, which made such a glittering Shew, that it dazled the Eyes of the Beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-priest came forth into the Field, and took his Place appointed him, at the one End of the List: The Emperor beholding the glorious Shew that the Arch-

Arch-priest made in his Arms, called forth the Merchant, causing him first to kneel down, and in the Presence of the Assembly, dubbed him Knight; then commanded he, that a most rich Armour should be put upon him in the Presence of King *Pepin*; who, during the time he was arming, promised unto this Merchant, if he overcame the Arch-priest, to advance him to great Livings and high Authority. These two Adversaries being now in readiness, and each having their Blazon about their Necks, their Horses were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give Battle: The Emperor gave strict Charge unto all his Officers of Arms, to have a special Eye upon the Arch-priest, for fear lest on the sudden he should flye the Field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their Lives. The Merchant being mounted, and his Sword girt to him, first entred the Lifts, after whom entred such abundance of People, that they were numberless. Then after came the Arch-priest, sumptuously accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great Honour and Dignity. The Combatants thus both entered the Lifts, ready to charge one another, King *Pepin* being there in Person, called out aloud unto the Merchant, saying unto him, My Friend, the Gods give the Victory over this false Traitor, I vow unto thee here before this Assembly, so I may but find out the Truth of my Sister *Bellisant*, notwithstanding the great Advancement that the Emperor hath promised, to take thee into *France*, and make thee Companion with the best of my Kingdom. The Merchant gave the King great Thanks, and said, Dread King, I doubt not but this Night to make this traiterous Priest confess, that he hath treacherously sought the Destruction of your Sister. Then came a Herald, administring to them both an Oath; and so, clearing the Lifts, left the Champions to their Fortunes. Now are both the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Marshals of the Field brought each of them a Spear, which they no sooner had received, but they put Spurs to their Horses, and ran with such Violence together, that their Spears were broken in their Hands, then they began to set forward for another Course, charging each other with their Swords in such violent manner, that with their Fury, they redounded from their Armour to the Ground, cutting off whole quarters of their Corsets, and left them as a Prey for those that attended the Fight. The Arch-priest seeing himself so stiffly matched, gave over the Fight till towards the Evening (for such was the Custom of the Country, that in any challenged Combate, either Party might refuse to follow the Fight so eagerly but that they might have a breathing time, so the Combatant were yielded vanquished before Sun-set, or else abide the Sentence of Death) thinking thereby to weary out the Merchant, which the Merchant perceiving, he

prepared to receive the Arch-priest courageously, when he encountred him; which being not long after, the Merchant so redoubled his Stroaks, that he smote off one of his Ears, and his Steel Habergion, and with the Violence of the same Blow, the Merchant's Sword fell from his Hand; which the Arch-priest seeing, put Spurs to his Horse, and charged him with such Violence, that he ran against the Merchant's Horse, and thrust out one of his



Eyes; the Horse feeling himself hurt, run up and down as mad, leaping and curvetting so furiously, that he unhors'd his Rider; and so hard was the Fortune of the Merchant, that in his Fall his Foot hung in the Stirrop, whereby he was brought into great Danger, the Horse hurrying him along the Field, that all were very sorrowful to behold this lamentable Spectacle, and with the amazement thereof, grew desperate in their Hopes. King *Pepin* also was so discouraged at this disastrous Chance, that the Tears did even trickle down his Cheeks, uttering many silent Ejaculations against the Unkindness of Fortune.

Now that which was most miraculous, was, all this time that the Merchant

chant was dragged up and down the Field, the Arch-priest could not enforce his Horse to come up unto the Merchant, but fled out to and fro, whereby he could not make a Prey upon the Merchant as he intended to do. But see, at the last, the Merchant's Horse fell down, by which means the Merchant got his Leg from forth the Stirrop, and at last got upon his Feet like a valiant and hardy Champion : the Priest perceiving the Merchant had recovered his Legs, came running with strong Violence upon him, and thereby lent him five or six Blows upon his Shoulders, that the poor Merchant was even astonished. At last he was forced to give back to recover Breath, and in a little space finding himself somewhat relieved, he subtly gave a fresh Assault upon the Arch-priest, against whom he struck with such Violence, that the Sword fell out of his Hand, but he first so wounded him, that the Blood ran through his Armour upon the Earth. This so vexed the Priest, that he grew Mad with Rage, and turned his Horse upon the Merchant, minding to have over-run him ; but the Merchant observing his Drift, prepared to receive him, and drawing a long Knife, punch'd it into the Belly of the Horse ; the Horse being thus wounded, began to fling and leap, inso-much, as the Priest was in danger to be unhors'd, and striving to save himself, he lost his Shield : The Merchant espying him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the Shield, and threw it away, so that he could no more recover it ; that done he made again towards his Horse, and smote him into the Belly with his Sword, which brought the Horse and his Rider down to the Ground. The Priest being thus unhors'd, was very nimble to recover himself, but the Merchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a Blow, that as he began to rise he laid him flat again upon the Ground, and leaping on him, pulled off his Helmet, thinking to have smitten off his Head ; the Arch-priest seeing himself in such Danger, said thus, Alas ! my Friend, I pray thee take pitty on me, and give me leave to confess my self, for I yield my self vanquish'd : The Merchant hereat was very courteous, and granted him his desire : The Priest was no sooner got on his Feet, but clasping the Merchant in his Arms, threw him on the Ground, and leap'd upon him in most sudden Outrage, saying thus to the Merchant, I have now an Advantage, and from my Hands thou shalt not escape with Life, if what I shall command thee thou do not effect. Ah ! replied the Merchant, hast thou thus betrayed me ? Well, it is so now that I stand at thy Mercy, and that thou maist do with me what pleaseth thee ; therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my Life I shall gladly do it. Then thus, go with me before the Emperor and King *Pepin*, and there openly, in the hearing of all Men, testify, that thou falsly hath accused me, and that there-

by I may be cleared of those false Accusations, which by thy means have been brought upon me : all which if you effectually accomplish, I swear and promise thee to save thy Life ; and besides, be a means unto the Emperor and his Brother to buy thee Peace and Forgiveness of this thy foul Fact, committed both against me and them also : Nay more, I swear to thee by the Faith of a Gentleman, and by the Order of Priesthood, to give thee a Niece of mine in Marriage, who shall be to thee Rich, Fair, and of a pleasant Behaviour ; and to conclude, thou shalt say more than ever any of thy Kindred ever told ; thou shalt be made more honourable and wealthy. Therefore now advise thy self, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable Life, or miserable in an untimely Death ? The Merchant having heard the Arch-priest's Tale, was upon the sudden exceeding sorrowful, and not without Cause ; but not knowing what to resolve upon, he at length thus answered : Sir Priest, your Arguments are grounded upon good Reasons, therefore I am ready to accomplish your Desires, so that you will be mindful of your Oath and Promises. In me, quoth the Arch-priest, there shall appear no Fault. Why then, quoth the Merchant, let us set forwards to the Emperor, and there I will set you free from all those Accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well, said the Arch-priest, wherefore rise up then, and let us go together. The Merchant had no sooner got on his Feet, but he began afresh to open all the Treason of the Arch-priest, even to his Teeth ; and again he took Courage, and now would requite him in the same Sawce he had served him before, and suddenly he clasping the Arch-priest in his Arms, threw him down, and having him at Advantage, he said thus, Arch-priest, seeing you have taught me to play my Part, therefore think no more upon Confessions, for you shall confess to me or none. The Arch-priest seeing himself beat at his own Weapons, began again to intreat ; but the Merchant not regarding his Words, presently put out his Eyes, and gave him so many deadly Blows, that he made him sure enough for rising to do him any harm ; then the Merchant called the Marshals of the Field, and said, Lo, here you may see that I have done my best Endeavour against the Arch-priest, and if he be vanquished, say so ; for I am sure I have brought him to such a pass, that I may kill him outright if I please ; therefore my Request now unto you is, That you would conduct *Alexander* the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and King *Pepin* of *France* hither to this Place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be Ear-witnesses of the Confession which the Arch-priest shall make unto them, and also to hear in what unjust manner he waged Combate against me.

The Marshals did according to the Request of the Merchant ; and then presently came the Emperor, with King *Pepin*, and all the Nobles, even to the place where the Arch-priest lay fully vanquished. Then the Emperor demanded of him the Truth, which the Arch-priest confessed, declaring the whole Plot of his Villanies, and how by his means the Empress had been wrongfully banished. When the Standers-by heard all the whole Matter, a multitude of Tears were shed ; but especially the Emperor, for his Lamentations were so violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitterness. Now if the Emperor were so sorrowful, what may you think of King *Pepin* her Brother ? Alas ! it was not without great Cause, when they saw and knew, that by too much Trust given to a treacherous Priest, they had lost the vertuous Lady *Bellisant*. Between these two great Princes there was great Joy and great Sorrow ; Joy to King *Pepin*, that his Sister was found Innocent and Blameless ; Sorrow to the Emperor, that he should be the only Means, by false Suggestions, of his Wife's Banishment. At last Lamentations were laid apart : When they had heard all the Confession of the Arch-priest's Treasons, the Emperor consulted with his Counsel, that the Traytor should be put into a Cauldron of hot burning Oyl, quick, and so finish his miserable Days, as he had traiterously sought the Life of that innocent Lady. Execution was suddenly to be done ; and it being done, the Assembly of People of all sorts was dismissed. Afterwards King *Pepin* withdrew himself towards his Lodging ; but the Emperor, sorrowful for what had hapned, came before King *Pepin*, and humbling himself, began thus to say, Alas ! dear Brother, I am all sorrowful for my Error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable Crime against my Lady, your Sister, and these great Nobles your Attendants ; let it suffice that I behold my own Folly : What shall I say ? I can but crave Pardon for my Fault, and give my self into your Hand, and do to me whatsoever pleaseth you. And for a further Satisfaction, I render up into your Hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining ; for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not Master of my own Affections. Take it, I say, for I will be no longer served ; but during the rest of my Life, become a Servant unto thee, or any, for no better have I deserved. King *Pepin* perceiving the Emperor so passionate, and so humble minded, kindly took him from the Ground, and before all his Lords, freely forgave him all Trespases. So that before they parted, there was a general Peace concluded, and a speedy Course taken to send into all Parts of the World, to seek the distressed Lady *Bellisant*. Thus all things settled in order, King *Pepin* prepared to take his Leave of the Emperor. King *Pepin* having taken

ken his Leave of *Constantinople*, as you have heard, after a long Journey arrived in *France*, and so to *Orleance*, to refresh his long and tyred Spirits, tossed to and fro in melancholly and heavy Cogitations for the woful Mis-chance befallen unto his Sister *Belisant*. Being thus safely arrived, and seated at *Orleance*, the King was right joyful that at the last he had attained the Place he so much desired, by reason it was one of the goodliest Forrests in the Realm. Being come hither, he caused great Banquets to be made for his Welcome; which was accordingly performed. In the midst of these Feastings and Revelings, the 'Squire that had the Charge of the Orphan *Valentine*, took and presented him before the King, saying, Dread Sovereign, lo, here I present before you the poor Orphan, that your Majesty found in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at my own Expence, dread Sovereign, but at your own. My Liege, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, because he is growing to Man's Estate; and so may it please your Majesty, it is time to dispose him as you please. The King having heard the words of the 'Squire, called this Orphan, named *Valentine*, unto him, and took him by the Hand, and moved divers Questions unto him, all which he answered with much Modesty and great Wisdom; and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupboard of Plate should be given unto him: Moreover, said the King, I command, that this Orphan, *Valentine*, be dearly preserved and kept, for that you shall perceive I respect him above common Love; I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished and kept with my Daughter *Eglantine*, she is both fair, wise, and well endowed with all the richest Gifts of Nature. The King having given this Command, it was accordingly accomplish'd, insomuch that they were both under Government of one and the same Nurse, and had one and the same Attendants; yea, every way they joyed one in the Company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of Lamentation till they came together again; but especially the King's Daughter, who so pondered on the prudent Carriages of the Orphan, that she became in love with him; insomuch, that his Absence brought her into a thousand Fears, and drove her melancholly and disturbed Thoughts into a thousand Doubts and Jealousies.

Now *Valentine* was ever practising himself in Feats of Arms; as Horse, Armour, Jufts and Turnaments, still exposing himself to all Dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the Inclination of this Youth, allotted unto him what his Heart desired, and furnished him with Armour, Horse, Lands, Revenues, and made him Lord of rich Possessions. Being thus furnished,

nished, there arose within the Court many secret Mutterings, whereby many People fretted so sore in Envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying, That when he was at the best, but a found, stray, poor, base Child, without any known Parents or Friends; of no gentle, nor noble Stock, and such like. Which when *Valentine* heard, he could take no other Revenge, but sit him down and weep; whose Tears fair *Eglantine* perceiving, would, in a tender woman-like Affection, accompany him, even pouring out her Tears also for Company. At length, when he saw Tears little prevailed, he began to forsake them, and taking Heart, bore himself like a Man amongst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and gentle Frame, that he gained the Love of all Sorts and Degrees, as well Nobles as Inferiours. *Valentine* thus growing up in love of the Court, and all this while his Brother *Orson* runs in the Forrest, all rough, and covered with Hair, like a Bear, leading the Life of a Beast; where we leave him for a while, and return unto the Affairs of King *Pepin*: It so chanced, that there came into *Orleance*, divers Ambassadors from the Pope, demanding Aid against the *Sarazens*, Enemies of the Holy Faith, who had lately taken the City of *Rome* by Violence: King *Pepin* understanding thereof by divers Letters received, addressed himself and his Powers to make his Resistance against this common Enemy; and amongst the rest of his worthy Followers, he ordained this young *Valentine* a Chief Commander. Fair *Eglantine* hearing that *Valentine* should make one, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful; for that she loved him more than any other Creature, and secretly sent a Messenger unto him to come and speak with her: And when he came, she sighing said unto him, Alas! *Valentine*, my Love, now am I quite bereft of all my Joy, for I perceive you will betake your self to a dangerous War; gentle Love, leave me not so desolate; would to the Gods that I had neither Father nor Friend in the World to contradict my Will, then shouldst thou soon perceive how my Affection stands to thy Person; for if Wishes might avail, I swear by the Gods, thou art the only Man I would joyn my self unto in the Bands of Marriage, and then shouldest thou be the King of *France*, and I Queen. The young Man hearing her idle Imaginations, said, Madam, leave these womanish Dotages, you know I am not a Person fitting your Estate, I am a found Stray, that your Father hath caused long time to be nourished for Charity sake. I am no way fitting you, or the meanest Damofel attending your Person; make your Choice elsewhere, and joyn Royal Blood into yours; and so, with all Duty, I take my leave, and commend you to the Gods. Having thus ended his Speech, away he goes, leaving

leaving the poor Lady all heavy, desolate, and in the midst of mourning.

By this time the King and all his Retinue were in a readiness to depart, and taking their Way from *Orleance* towards *Rome*, they went through a mighty Forrest; and being entred, the King called his Lords and Barons together, and said thus unto them: My Lords, it is not unknown to you, that in these Woods (as Report goeth) there liveth a strange Monster, a wild Man, much feared of Passengers, which Spectacle of Man's Shape I long to behold before I venture out further upon our intended Voyage to *Rome*. The Lords generally consented, and the Chase was suddenly appointed. Being entred the Wood, they chased divers sorts of wild Beasts, and overcame them: But as for *Orson*, the wild Man, none durst adventure the finding forth of him, save only his Brother *Valentine* (but he knew nothing) and he followed still the Chase, hoping at last both to find and fight with him also. Every way they begirt the Wood, some one way, some another; the King himself venturing so far, that he came before a Cave dark and obscure, whereas the wild Man used to hide himself. *Orson* perceiving the King, rushed out upon him, caught him within his Nails (the which was long and crooked) and in rough and ravenous manner cast him on the Ground. The King thus suddenly surprized by a Savage, never look'd for Life, but in a piteous manner cryed out for Help, who was seconded by a valiant Knight at Arms, who espying the King to be almost strangled, suddenly drew his Sword to have run the wild Man through. *Orson* perceiving the glittering Sword, left the King and run furiously upon the Knight, took him in his Arms, and overthrew him Horse and all. The Horse sore affrighted, got up again, and in a mad Fit ran up and down the Forest; but as for the Rider, tho' a Knight at Arms, *Orson* held him so fast with his Twangs and Talons, that at last he pulled him to pieces. In the mean space the King escaped, and meeting part of his Company, related to them the great Danger he had escaped, and the fearful Death of the Knight. These Tydings much amazed the rest of the Company, yet being manfully resolved, they joyned themselves together, and marched towards the Cave to meet with *Orson*, and either to take him alive, or put him to death in the Cave. Being come thither, they found the Knight dead, and torn in pieces, but *Orson* they could not find, for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered only by his Brother *Valentine*; of whose Proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the King perceiving their Labour lost, gave over the Chase, and set forwards towards *Rome*. After this the King ranked his Forces into Battleray,

ray, and the great Ensign of *France* was given to one called *Myllon Daugler*, a very valiant Prince, and a wise Leader, so that he and his two Brethren, *Gervas* and *Sampson*, had the whole Command of the Forces that then were marching towards *Rome*. When they were come unto *Rome*, King *Pepin* desired Battle, and would fain understand the state that the City now stood in under the Conquest of the *Sarazens*; but it was told him, he should not be too inquisitive of those Affairs; for the Admiral of the *Sarazens* had surprized the City, and put multitudes to the Sword, and had spoiled and defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples for their heathenish Idols; and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Priors, Monks, Friars, and all the Ecclesiastical Persons for to serve at their heathenish Altars, and to Sacrifice to their Devils, after the Custom of the Heathens. When King *Pepin* understood hereof, he was much enraged, to hear that the Christians were thus captivated by the Heathens; wherefore he advanced nearer to the City, and there having assembled all his Forces, he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a sudden Assault; for his Fury was so great against these heathenish *Sarazens*, that he vowed Revenge upon them; but taking better Advice, he reserved himself and his Army for a Season. What after befel shall be delivered at large, when fit Occasion serveth our Purpose.

Chap. VII. *How King Pepin besieged Rome; and how Valentine Justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.*

King *Pepin* being thus come to *Rome*, besieged it, and after some Days spent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mighty Men of War, and began to speak unto them in this manner: My Lords, and Followers, you well know that this heathenish Admiral, Enemy to the Christian Faith, and Church of *Rome*, hath put many Christians to the Sword, and violently trodden under Foot all such as withstood his Power; therefore it is our Duties to commiserate their Estate that are thus overthrown, and to try the Fortune of a Battle amongst those heathenish *Pagans*; and either drive them out of the City, or leave our dead Carcasses as a Prey, as many have done before: Wherefore I, King *Pepin*, resting upon this Resolution, would fain find out a Man to bear to the proud Admiral a Letter of Defiance in my Name. King *Pepin* having finished his Speech, there was none amongst them made any Answer. At length *Valentine*, seeing all stand mute, stepped

F

ped

ped before the King, and began to speak on this manner: Mighty Sovereign, so you be pleased to give me leave, I shall undertake the Message, and shall no whit fear to speak both to the Pagan Admiral, and to the whole Host of Pagans, were their Multitude twice as many as they be, and my Return shall make Proof that I have done my Message both with Honour and Advantage to your Majesty. The King hearing *Valentine* thus forward, and of such undoubted and valiant Resolution, was right joyful, and all those of his Princely Train greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous Spirit. Hereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of Defiance, and deliver the same to *Valentine*. *Valentine* prepared himself thereunto, and no sooner had he received the Letter, but he took his Leave of the King and all his Train, and being bravely mounted, he took his Way towards *Rome*, and so to the Palace where the Admiral lay: So coming thither, he came before the Admiral, and saluted him after this manner: The Gods preserve the Noble and Puissant King *Pepin*, my Lord and Sovereign; and *Mahomet* whom thou serveest, save and defend thee, redoubted Admiral. When *Valentine* had thus spoken, the Admiral roused him from his Chair, and with fierce and frowning Brows, replied thus unto him: Messenger return, and get thee gone out of my sight, and say thus unto King *Pepin*: Will him either to renounce his Faith, and believe on *Mahomet*, or else let him look to receive no other Sentence than Death; and so destroy him, together with all his Lords and Kingdom: Get thee gone, and make here no longer abode; Go, I say, reply not a word, for my Heart is all enraged that so long I suffer thee. Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty Enterprize, thus to enter my Palace to deliver any such Message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the heighth of Majesty, if that I did assuredly know, that what thou hast done were through Pride of Heart and Insolency, thereby to make a Mock at our Majesty, thou shouldst never return to King *Pepin*, to carry an Answer to thy proud Master's Letters.

Valentine hearing these furious words sounding from the Admiral, began to be afraid; wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, he mildly said, High and mighty Emperor, do not imagine that by Pride I am come before you; for when you shall understand the manner of my coming, you will be astonished thereat. Why then, quoth the Admiral, say on, tell us how thou art come, for I swear by *Mahomet*, I shall take great Pleasure in hearing thee relate thine Enterprize. Then said *Valentine*, Sir, so it is, that I was accused to King *Pepin* for a Coward, and that since I came to this War, I would secretly have stolen away from the Camp,
and

and returned again into *France*; for which, great Admiral, the King had me in great Disgrace, and vowed the next Morning to smite off my Head. Perceiving my self in this Danger, I fought rather to save my Life, than to lose my Life and Honour; and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court, that I would undertake to come unto your Court, to defie you on the King's behalf, and therewithal, that I would Challenge you to break three Spears with you in single Combate, to try your Valiantry, and to win my lost Honour that I told unto you: Wherefore my Request is, that your Greatness would grant me my Request, otherwise I dare not return again, lest the King put me to death. The Admiral hearing this pitiful Tale of *Valentine*, said unto him, Son, I do swear by *Mahomet*, that thou shalt not be refused, but at this Instant I offer thee the Jufts; and to the End that those *French-men* that lye in Siege before the City may have a Sight thereof, I will ordain the Place of Justing to be without the City. *Valentine* humbly thanked him, and in token of his Acceptance and feigned Love, he fell down and kissed the Feet of the Admiral. *Valentine* grew into great Favour in the Admiral's Court; but yet it often troubled his Mind, that he could not know who were his Parents. But while he bestowed his wandring Thoughts here, the Admiral said thus unto him: Fair Son, methinks you are very pensive. 'Tis true, quoth he, and not without Cause, for I am afraid that I shall be slain in these Jufts; wherefore my Request is, That I may have a Confessor to give me Absolution for my Sins. Then the Admiral commanded that a Priest should be brought him: The Priest being come said unto *Valentine*, Now Confess you unto me. *Valentine* getting the Priest aside, he said thus unto him: Sir, you are a Christian Priest, and you ought most to defend the Christian Faith, wherefore hearken to what I shall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great Secresie. Thus it is, you know that this Day I am to Just with the heathenish Admiral, the greatest Enemy of Christian People; now I am well assured, that a great number of the *Sarazens* will issue forth of the City, to be Eye-witnesses of these Jufts to be held without the City: Therefore you shall give Warning to all *Christians*, to keep within the Walls, arming themselves in a readines, and closely keep it from the Ears of the *Pagans*, so that when the *Pagans* are come forth to behold the Jufts, the *Christians* suddenly shall surprize the Guards that keep the Gates; and if any Mutiny arise, let them keep out those that are out. And send a Messenger to King *Pepin* of what is done, that he with his Army may come unto them that are without, while those within are set on by the armed *Christians*; so be-girting them on every side, that in the End we may make such a Slaughter

of them, that the Christians may receive both their City in Peace, and their former Liberty. So having ended his Speech, the Priest departed. The Admiral commanded *Valentine* to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them charge he should be honourably attended at the Board. Being set among many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Nephew of his, named *Salatas*, commanding him to see *Valentine* as well armed at all points as himself; and more-over charged his Nephew to deliver unto *Valentine* the best Horse in his Stable. *Salatas* having received this Command from his Uncle the Admiral, took *Valentine* and led him into a fair Hall; being come thither, he caused to be laid before him divers Armours, willing him to make choice of the best. *Valentine* cast his Eyes upon them all, and at last appointed the Armour wherewith he should be armed; and making himself ready as soon as he could, he approached down into the Court, whereas he was attended with his Horse, ready to put his Foot into the Stirrop. Being come down out of the Hall, he presently mounted his Horse; the Admiral issuing likewise ready armed out of his privy Palace. Being thus armed, they took their way towards the chief Gate of the City of *Rome*, for on that side King *Pepin* had laid his Siege. When they were both in the Field, *Valentine* hung his Shield about his Neck, in which he wore a Heart waving in a Field of Silver, and on one side a Tree; all which did signifie that he was found in a Forest, and were the same Arms king *Pepin* bestowed on him. The Champions being entred the Lists, great was the Clamour of the *French* in joy of *Valentine*; the sound whereof the *Pagans* hearing, suddenly issued out of the City to behold these triumphant Jufts.

The Frier having plaid his Part among the *Christians* within the City, presently after the *Pagans* were gone out to behold these Triumphs, addressed themselves to take Possession of the Gates; which having gotten, there was no Entrance again to be expected. King *Pepin* being acquainted with their Purpose, prepared all his Men of War ready to relieve *Valentine*, if Necessity required. Having all things in readines, the Hour was at hand that the Jufts should begin. So each of them being prepared for the Encounter, they valiantly couched their Spears, and the first Course proved so valiant, that their Spears shivered all in Splinters; each Combatant perceiving Valour to brandish on the top of his Helm, made out a second Course, where *Valentine* got the better; for with his Spear charged against the Admiral, he gave him such a Blow, that he forced his Spear quite thro' his Body: Inso-much that he fell from his Horse stark dead, making a pitiful Noise at his Departure; wherefore the *Pagans* ran at *Valentine*, and would have killed him.

him. *Valentine* perceiving their Intent, with a resolute Courage, put Spurs to his Horse, and with his Sword drawn, rushed thro' the thickest of the *Pagans*, and slew many of them as he passed. King *Pepin* with his Host came up to the Aid of *Valentine*, but he was so beset by the *Pagans*, that he was smitten off his Horse; which *Valentine* espying, came up to the Rescue of the King, so that he horsed him again. The King perceiving himself delivered out of Danger, called unto *Valentine*, and said, My Child, thou hast saved my Life, which if the Gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battle grew so hot, that the *Pagans* were forced to retire to the City; when they came to the Gates, the *Christians* that were in the City issued on them, and placed the Ensigns and Standards of King *Pepin* on the Walls. The *Pagans* seeing King *Pepin's* Colours displayed on the Walls, betook themselves to flight: In chase of them the *Christians* followed so fast, that they shamefully ended their Days. In this Battle were slain a thousand *Pagans*, only by the means of *Valentine*, who bare himself so valiantly that Day. Thus by his Prowess the City was again restored to the *Christians*; for which Deed there was great Triumph in all *Christendom*, but especially at *Rome*: So that all the Inhabitants round about gave immortal Praise to *Pepin* King of *France*, and by the general Applause of the People, he was created Emperor, and Crowned by the Pope. King *Pepin* did many goodly Acts in his time, administering Justice to all. This happened in the time of Pope *Clement* the Fourth.

Chap. VIII. *How* *Haufrey* and *Henry* repined at the Love the King did shew towards *Valentine*.

King *Pepin* having expelled the *Pagans* out of *Rome*, he took his way back towards *Orleance*; and being there arrived, he was joyfully welcomed by *Bertha* his Queen, and her little Son *Charlemain*, and her fair Daughter *Eglantine*; and their Joy appeared so much the more, for that *Valentine*, who accordingly came unto her; and when she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an amorous Countenance, began thus unto him: *Valentine*, you above all the rest are most welcome; and well ought it so to be, for Fame hath blown forth her Trumpet of your Triumph; and Report says you are the only Champion that drove the *Pagans* out of *Rome*. *Valentine* replied, Madam, I can hinder no Man to speak what pleaseth him; but as for my self, I have done little deserving Praise; but it hath pleased the King your Father, to do me that great Honour, even so much, as all the Days of my Life I am not able to make the least part of Recompence. And as he spake

spake these words, *Haufrey* and *Henry*, two Men composed of all Envy, entred the Chamber of *Eglantine*; and seeing him, began thus to speak: *Valentine*, what have you to do here in the Chamber of our Sister? It is no Place for such Straglers as you are; this your Boldness is not to be born; no Man knows of whom you are, therefore we advise you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again, lest you dearly buy these your Presumptions. *Valentine* hearing these words, answered: Wrong me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your Sister to her Dishonour: What though I be Poor, and know not of whence I am, yet I am not so Base as to offer Violence unto one descended from the Blood of Kings: And further, I promise and vow never to come near her Chamber again: And therewithal departed, leaving the Lady very pensive all alone: *Valentine* hasted to the Palace, to wait upon the King at Dinner, where was in presence *Haufrey* and *Henry*, and the Duke of *Myllain Dauglar*, who likewise waited upon the King during Dinner-time. Dinner being finished, the King arose, and called to *Valentine*, and in hearing of all the Nobles, began thus to say: My Lords, here is *Valentine*, that hath well deserved at our Hands, and that saved my Life when I was in Danger: therefore to the End you may take Knowledge of his good Service towards me, I freely give him the Earldom of *Clarimont* of *Avergne*; and when I can bestow more upon him, he shall not be forgotten. *Valentine* gave him many Thanks, saying, That he had heaped upon him more Honours than he could any ways deserve. *Haufrey* and *Henry* hearing these words, grew greatly male-content; and at last *Henry* began to talk with his Brother after this manner. This found Fellow, I perceive, grows in great Favour with the King, and there must be some Course taken to cross his Designs, or else our overthrow will shortly follow upon it; for, quoth he, you know well, that the King hath no Sons but we two, and one little one, named *Charlemain*, which, if our Father dye, may by our Furtherance, quickly be set beside the Kingdom. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this *Valentine* will support and uphold him against us; therefore Brother, I think it good to frame some Plot against him, to bring him in displeasure with the King, and so far to prosecute our Revenge against him, that if it be possible, we will not only work his downfal, but Life and all: This being effected, we may at our pleasure govern the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his Speech, *Haufrey* replied, Let it be as thou hast said, and that we may entrap his Life, this shall be our Plot: We will both go to the King, and tell him, that this Upstart hath deflowered our Sister, and that we took him in Bed with her; which, when the King heareth, he will certainly put

put him to death. Being thus resolved, they daily fed their Imaginations with the Death of *Valentine*; while he, nothing mistrusting, served the King daily in all Duty, insomuch, that the King's Love daily increased towards him, and above all other most desire his Company.

Here let us leave off a little, and come to *Orson* his Brother, who all this while lived in the Forest, so much feared of all Men, that none durst approach nigh the Wood: Daily Complaints came to the King from every side; and amongst the rest, it chanced once that a poor Man came unto the King all wounded, saying thus unto him: Sir, I am come before you to make Complaint against a wild Man in the Woods, for one Day as I and my Wife passed through the Forest, carrying Bread and other Victuals, the wild Man came upon us, took it away, and eat it every bit; and more than that, he violently took my Wife from me, and constrained her to yield unto his lawless Lust. The King hearing out the poor Man's Tale, was disposed to make himself merry with his ill Fortune, and therefore asked the poor Man this Question, Whether grieved him most, either taking away his Victuals, or his Wife? By my Faith, said the poor Man, at the wrong offered to my Wife. Thou hast rightly said, quoth the King, therefore I command my Treasurer to see Restitution made unto thee for the loss of thy Victuals; but as for thy Wife, thou must bear the Burthen thereof thyself. After this the King caused all his Barons to assemble, and make some Order to take *Orson*, all which they did; and hereupon a Proclamation was sent unto all parts of the Realm, that whosoever he was that could take this wild Man alive or dead, should have a thousand Marks for his Reward. Hereupon assembled many worthy Knights to take this Task in hand; but the King being one Day in his Palace in the midst of his Nobles, talking and debating who should be appointed to this Business. *Haufrey*, enemy unto *Valentine*, being there, said thus unto the King: Sir, here is *Valentine*, whom you have nourished, and advanced to high Dignities, and one that hath offered unlawful Love to our Sister *Eglantine*, he is fittest to set forward to try his Valour, and let him be employed to fetch in this wild Man, that is such a Terror to the Inhabitants: And if with his Valour he can vanquish him, then let him have *Eglantine* in Marriage, which is his desired Wish. The King hearing these words of his Son, said: Away, for thy Speech savoureth of nothing but Envy: What though he be poor, of low Birth, and found in a Forest, yet I find him to me true and trusty, and of gentle Carriage; and to me seemeth to be born of more noble Parentage than thou art: Leave off these thy malicious and bitter Speeches against him, for the Behaviour that dwelleth in him, shews that he is descended

cended of more noble Lineage than as yet to us appeareth. And I, for my part (for the divers Vertues that are daily seen in him) am willing that he go to my Daughter when ever he please, for I am well assured, that no Dishonour can be offered out of a Branch of such a generous Spirit.

Hausfrey hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of *Valentine*, was sore displeased in Heart; but setting a good Face on the Matter, dissembles his Countenance for that time; but it seemed *Valentine* well observed him, and at last brake forth into these words: *Hausfrey*, without any Cause given on my part, you have spoken ill of me, and your Will is, that I should undertake the Fight and Conquest of the wild Man, only to this End, that I might end my Days, and so your Revenge be accomplish'd upon me: Well, be it so, here before the King I take a solemn Oath, that I will take the Enterprize upon me, and find out the wild Man; and having found him, I will fight him, and either bring him alive or dead, or else leave my dead Carcass as a Witness in the open Field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be seen in this Country till I have found the Father that begot me; as also bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlock, and how I came to be left an Infant in the Wood. The King understanding well what Danger *Valentine* had plung'd himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two Sons, cursing them, for that they were the Cause of this Enterprize; for he loved *Valentine* more than any, and at last called unto *Valentine*, and said, My Child, advise you well what you undertake, for to fight with the wild Man is Desperation it self; for you cannot be ignorant how many valiant Men and worthy Champions have by him been overcome; and others likewise of valiant account, that hath forsaken this Combate: Therefore, I say, let not the evil words of a few malicious Men make you desperate in losing your Life. For, my Child, it is far better to endure all the bitter words of Envy, which is accounted Vertue, than to hazard one's Life against such a Monster and no Man. *Valentine* reply'd, Pardon me my Liege, for I will never revoke my intended Purpose: They call me found Brat, which grieves my very Soul, for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what place; but I rest determin'd, and so take my leave; for to-morrow Morning will I set forward to my intended Enterprize. Having taken his leave, marvel not if the fair Lady *Eglantine* made great Lamentation for what had hapned; but the next Morning by break of Day, she called one of her Maidens, and said, Go to *Valentine*, and bid him come and speak with me before his Departure; bid him fear no Danger of Life, for I would fain take my leave of him. The Damsel did as the Lady commanded; and when she came to *Valentine*, she found him mounted on Horse-

Horfe-back, and ſhe did her Meſſage unto him. He underſtanding her Errand, ſaid unto her; Damſel, I know the Love to be great between the Lady *Eglantine* and me, yet I would not wiſh her to deſire that that will turn to her Diſhonour: But envy is of ſo great a Power, that it never leaves them whom once it poſſeſſeth. For certain it is, that *Haufray* and *Henry* (Brethren to your Lady) have at me great and malicious Hearts, and will purſue me, even unto Death, if it were poſſible; wherefore, fair Damſel, bear her this Answer, which you heard me tell, and bid her think no Evil thereof; and further, that ſhe'd hold me in Excuse, that I reſuſe to come; and ſo farewell.

Chap. IX. *How Valentine Conquered his Brother Orſon, the Wild-man, in the Forreſt of Orleance, and afterwards departed from the Forreſt with Orſon towards Orleance, wherein King Pepin was reſident.*

NOW is *Valentine* upon his Journey, accompanied only with his Page; whither being come, he put his Helmet on his Head, and ſent him back again: So he rode forth all that Day, ſeeking the Wild-man, but he could not find him; ſo the night drawing on, he deſcended from his Horſe, and tyed him up to a Tree; having ſo done, he reſreſhed his Body with ſuch Victuals as he had; and when he had eaten, and the Day ſhut in, he for Fear, betook himſelf to the Top of a Tree, and there abode all that Night. In the Morning, as ſoon as Day appeared, he looked round about, and at laſt eſpied his Brother *Orſon* running through the Forreſt, at length the Wild-man came to the Place where *Valentine* had tyed his Horſe, who much wondring at the Beauty of him, began to claw him with his long Nails, thinking thereby to rouze up the Courage of the Horſe; for he had never ſeen the like. The Horſe feeling the Wild-man's Nails, began to fling and kick exceedingly. *Valentine* ſetting on the Top of a Tree, noted the terrible Shape of the Wild-man, and began to be afraid; but calling on the Gods, he requeſted their Aid againſt this Monster. *Orſon* all this while was ſtill buſied in beholding the Horſe; and ſtill offered him ſuch Injury with his Nails, that the Horſe did nothing but kick and bite him: When *Orſon* perceived the Horſe to be too hard for him, he caught faſt hold on him, and thought to have overthrown him: *Valentine* perceiving his Horſe in danger to be Slain, he cryed out aloud, and ſaid, Wild-man, leave my Horſe, and ſtay till I come down, and with me thou ſhalt have fighting enough. The Wild-man hearing a ſtrange Voice, looked up into the Tree, and eſpying there a Man, made unto him divers Signs, with his Hands and Head, to come down,

down and he would pull him in Pieces. *Valentine* making all the haste he could, drew his Sword, and leap'd upon the Ground close by the Wild-man; when *Orson* saw the Sword, and that he offered to smite him therewith, he leaped Back, and kept himself from the Stroak; but suddenly returned again upon *Valentine*, and threw him unto the Ground: Herewithal *Valentine* was very much discomfitted, for he looked for no other than present Death in the Place; for he felt the Strength of the Wild-man so great, that he had no hope of escaping. Being thus both grovelling on the Ground, *Valentine* assayed divers times to have gotten *Orson* under him, but could not; when he saw, that by Strength, there was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharp pointed Knife, and smote *Orson* into one of his Sides, that the Blood issued out abundantly; *Orson* feeling himself wounded, all enraged, gave such a Shriek, that the Woods echoed again at the Sound thereof; but yet recovering himself, he fiercely assaulted *Valentine* with his sharp Nails, that he got him at such an Advantage, that he threw him once more upon the Earth, where lying, they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last *Orson* took the Shield from about the Neck of *Valentine*, and having got it, he beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers Colours therein emblazed: When he had looked his fill, he cast it against the Ground, and suddenly returned again to *Valentine*, and with the Violence of his Nails and Teeth, he brake in Pieces both the Ribs of his Armour, and his Habergion also, smiting and beating him so sharply, with his Nails, that he made the Blood follow in all Places whereon he laid hold: *Valentine* feeling himself sore wounded, after some Orisons used to the Gods, he made again upon *Orson* with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him; but *Orson* recoyling Back, step'd unto a Tree hard by, which he pulled up, and made thereof a Club; being thus prepared, he made against *Valentine*, and striking at him, he gave him such a Blow, that he made him fall upon one Knee; *Valentine* recovering again, laid about him so fiercely, that there began again another dangerous Fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the Cause of this their Fortunes. *Orson* was so cruel and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed *Valentine*, had it not been for his Sword; for he was sore afraid thereof, by reason he had received a Wound before by a Knife; long time they Fought together, insomuch, as they both grew Faint: In which tiredness, both standing gaping upon each other, *Valentine* looked wistly upon *Orson*, and said thus: Wild-man, wherefore dost thou not yield thy self unto me? here thou livest like a Beast, having no knowledge of Humane Society; come thy way with me, and I shall make thee know thy self, and others; I will give thee Food of all Sorts, and

and also Cloath thee in Apparel fitting thy Humane Shape. *Orson* understanding by Signs he meant his Good, fell down upon his Knees, and stretched forth his Hands towards his Brother, making Signs unto him, to forgive him, and he would commit himself under his Command; and with further Signs promised, that, during his Life, he would assist him both in Body and Goods. This happening thus, it was great Joy to *Valentine*, in that he had conquered the Wild-man, which so many Knights durst not meddle withal; for by this only he had won himself more Honour than any Knight that lived in *France*. All this hard Adventure now knitting up in this manner, he took *Orson* by the Hand, and shewed him by Signs, that he should go on before him till they were out of the Wood, for he would not trust him behind; and being out of the Wood, *Valentine* took off one of his Girths, and bound both his Hands fast upon his Body, that he should not Attempt again to do him any Hurt; and in this manner, being bound, he mounted on Horse-back, and led the Wild-man after him, like a Beast, who never resisted; which was a Thing most of all to be wondered at.

Valentine took his way towards *Orleance*; but you must imagine he could not reach there in one Day, therefore he determin'd to lodge at the next Town or Village; being come thither, he thought there to take his Rest that Night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the wild Man, every Man ran into his House, shutting up their Doors; and for Fear, durst not offer once to look out on him; *Valentine* perceiving them full of Fear, cryed out unto them, saying, *Open your Doors every Man, and fear not, for we are come only for Lodging*; yet for all this, they would not give him Succour. At last, seeing neither Intreaty or Threatning would prevail, he Swore most bitterly, *That if they would not receive him into their Houses, to rest there that Night, he would loose the Wild-man amongst them*; still he proceeded to intreat for Lodging, but none would give it him. At last, as he had threatned so he did; and letting loose the Wild-man, he made him Signs how he should run against such a Gate, which was an Inn, the which he did; and wringing a Post from out of the Earth, he therewithal flung them open, with such Violence, that they fell off the Hooks upon the Ground. *Valentine* seeing the Gate opened in this manner, entred the House, and the wild Man with him: But when they within saw the Gate broken Down, all forsook the House, and ran out at the Back-door, leaving all to *Valentine*, and his beastly Guest: *Valentine* perceiving them all fled, went to the Stable, and set up his Horse, and dressed him; and *Orson* in the mean Time went into the Kitchen, where there was Capons, and divers other Provisions of Flesh, upon a Spit Roasting at the Fire. *Valentine* made Signs to *Orson* that he

he should turn the Spit; but as soon as *Orson* understood the Meaning, he set his horny Tailons upon the Meat, and tore it from the Spit, devouring it as greedily as a ravenous Wolf; when he had torn the Meat in pieces, he espied a Coudron of Water standing by, into which he put his Head like a Horse, and drank Water unmeasurably. *Valentine* perceiving him to be athirst, made Signs unto him, that he should forsake the Water, and he would give him Wine; and therewithal took a Pot, and led him into the Cellar; when *Valentine* had drawn the Pot full, he gave it unto *Orson*, who set it to his Mouth, and tasting the Liquor, found it to be very good, drinking so freely thereof, that he drank out all the Wine, and afterward threw the Pot against the Ground, making a Sign for more: *Valentine* fulfilled his Signs, and filled him the Pot again; but *Orson* espying a little Bowl-dish, he put the Wine into it, and carried it into the Stable to *Valentine's* Horse; but *Valentine* perceiving that, made Signs unto him, that his Horse drank nothing but Water; yet *Orson* shewed again by Signs, that Wine was a great deal better than Water. Many other Accidents happened while they were in the House, which here we will pass over; for the Night was so far spent, that Rest were fitter for them than Meat. *Valentine* hastened him to Supper, making *Orson* to bear him Company (after his kind) but *Orson* drank so freely of the Wine which *Valentine* gave him, that he became drunk; and in the end got him to the Fire, and fell fast asleep. *Valentine* seeing what had happened, said, Now do I perceive there is neither any Strength nor Resistance in this wild Man, for if I would, I could suddenly here end his Days: but in regard he would make further Tryal of him, he punched against him with his Foot so hard, that it awaked him: Being awaked, he made Signs unto him that there was People about the House; with that *Orson* suddenly arose, as in a Trance, and catching up a great Log within the Chimney, he ran against the Gate of the House, that he made all shake again; at which sudden Action *Valentine* fell into a great Laughter; which *Orson* perceiving, let all alone, and betook himself to rest again. *Valentine* made unto him another Sign, that he should fear nothing, for he would be his Watch-man, but *Orson* would not sleep again but with the Log in his Arms: And *Valentine* did as he had promised unto *Orson*, and watched all that Night, fearing the Inhabitants, lest that they should grow into an Uproar; for they were so greatly possessed with Fear, that they forsook their Houses, and ran every one to the Church, and all that Night so tumbled the Bells backward, that e'er the Morning came, all the Village was filled with Men of War. Now the Morning being come, *Valentine* betook him to his Horse, leading *Orson* bound (as he did the Day before) towards *Orleance*, and the next
Day

Day came to the City: The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the wild Man, ran every one into his House, shutting their Doors, and getting up into their highest Rooms, gazed out of their Windows. Being entred the City, Tidings came to King *Pepin*, that *Valentine* had conquered the wild Man: The King hearing thereof, was greatly astonished, and at last said of *Valentine*, My Child, in a happy Hour wast thou born, blessed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the Wood, for now I see thou art fortunate, and by thee we are delivered of our Fears. *Valentine* rode thro' the City of *Orleanse*, till he came at the Pallace Gate of the King; and when the Porter saw *Orson*, he shut the Gates upon them, till *Valentine*, with a loud Voice, said, Fear not, but go and tell the King, that I will shield him and all his Court from the Fury of this wild Man; for I have made him so Tame, that he will not hurt any one. The Porter went and told the King what *Valentine* said; who commanded they should enter the Palace. Then *Valentine* took *Orson* by the Hand, and led him into the Court. When *Bertha* and the fair *Eglantine* heard that the wild Man was come, they got them to their Chambers for fear; *Valentine* went up into the great Hall where the King sat, accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home: Among the rest stood *Haufray* and *Henry*, who also made great shew of Love, but in Heart wished the wild Man had been his death. King *Pepin* and the rest of the Lords gazed on the wild Man, insomuch as the King said, He is made of a proper Mould, fair of Stature, and though now he seem rough, yet if he were cloathed, he would become the Shape of a right worthy Knight. Then *Valentine* said, My Liege, it were requisite he were Baptized. It pleaseth me well, said the King, let it be done; so the Priest was appointed to Baptize him: These were his God-fathers, King *Pepin*, the Duke of *Millain*, and *Valentine*; and the Dutcheß of *Bourbon* his God-mother; so they called his Name *Orson*. The Baptism being solemnized, the King sat him down to Dinner, and *Valentine* waited on his Cup. Then *Orson* was commanded in the Hall to see his Behaviour; and being come, the King beheld him earnestly. *Orson* seeing the Meat, took as much as he could grasp in his Hand, and devoured it; having eaten that, he espied one of the Attendants carrying a Peacock to the Table, who coming near unto him, he snatched it, and sat him down and devoured it. *Valentine* seeing his Behaviour, made Signs unto him, that he did not well, whereat *Orson* seemed ashamed; but the King bad him let him alone, for he much delighted in his Rudeness. *Orson* having devoured much Meat, got a Pot of Wine, and drank it off, throwing the Pot to the Ground. Night being come, *Valen-*

tine and *Orson* was appointed to a fair Chamber and Bed ; but as soon as *Orson* entered, he laid him down on the Ground, and so fell asleep.

Chap. X. *How Haufray and Henry took Counsel together to Murther Valentine in the Chamber of Eglantine : And how Duke Savary sent unto King Pepin for Aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his Will.*

Right glad and joyful was the fair Lady *Eglantine*, that *Valentine* had conquered the wild Man, insomuch that she sent him word to bring the wild Man into her Presence. Then *Valentine* took *Orson* by the Hand, and led him to *Eglantine*, where were assembled divers Ladies of Honour to behold him ; *Orson* being in the Chamber, in a laughing Humour leap'd upon the Bed, there making divers Signs unto the Ladies, which pleased them, but his Meaning they could not understand ; at which they were right sorry. At last *Valentine* opened to them his Meaning ; which was, that he would gladly kiss and play with some of them, whereat they looked at one another, and began to laugh. While this Assembly of the Ladies chanced in the Chamber of *Eglantine*, *Haufray* came to *Henry*, and said thus unto him : Brother, you see how the Honour and Credit of this Foundling encreaseth, which much eclipseth ours, and we must seek some Remedy for it. It is true, said *Henry*, wherefore let us lay some Plot to cut him off. Then said *Haufray*, hearken to what I shall say, *Valentine* is now with our Sister, and we may have fit Occasion to kill him in her Chamber : When we have done, we will inform the King that we found him in her Bed. According to their Determination they put it into Action, and rushed into the Chamber of *Eglantine* : As soon as *Haufray* was entred, he roughly thus began with *Valentine* : Disloyal Man, now shalt thou know the Price of thy Inconstancy, purchasing daily great Dishonour unto the King our Father, by abusing our Sister, and leading her Affections to work your Pleasure on her ; insomuch that by thee she is made unfortunate : But sith the King hath been told thereof, and he regardeth not our Complaint, it is therefore high time to take Vengeance of thee in our own Persons. And *Haufray* lift up his Fist, and calling him Traytor, smote *Valentine* on the Face, so that the Blood ran out of his Mouth : *Henry*, on the other side, came to him, and with a Glave thought to have smitten *Valentine* to the Earth ; but *Orson* perceiving they were in earnest, leap'd out, and gave *Haufray* such a Stroak with his rough Hand, that he felled him ; and after ran to *Henry*, and girded him so between his Arms, that if the Ladies had

had not been in Presence to have appeased his Wrath, he had destroyed 'em both. This caused an Out-cry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons of the Court to know the Cause of this sudden Clamour; but when they understood that *Orson* had dealt so violently with the King's Sons, they would have killed him with their Swords: *Valentine* perceiving their Fury to arise, drew his Sword, and swore, That if any of them offered Violence to *Orson*, he would run them thorough: This said, he made a Sign to him to be still, and so rested himself for that time. *Haufray* and *Henry* went to their Father, making unto him great Complaint against *Valentine* and the wild Man, saying, Father, in an ill Hour was this *Valentine* born, for he hath brought hither the wild Man only to work our overthrow; and if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal Person. The King hearing this Complaint, was exceeding sorry, and gave them this Answer: That as for *Orson*, he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him; and as for *Valentine*, the King sent for him, to demand the Cause of this Disorder. *Valentine* being come before the King, began to say on this manner: Dread Sovereign, I was in the Chamber of your Daughter *Eglantine*, accompanied with divers other Ladies, that desired to see *Orson*: I know not how, nor why, your two Sons violently entred, charging me, that I had abused the Body of your fair Daughter. Moreover, in the Heat of their Violence used against me, *Haufray* smote me on the Face, that the Blood issued out of my Mouth; and *Henry* lifting up a Glave, thought to have taken away my Life. All which when *Orson* saw, he suddenly made towards them, and smote them both to the Earth, and therewithal began this Uproar. The King hearing this Tale, said, And is all this true that you have said? Upon my Life, said *Valentine*, all that I have spoken is true. Then, said the King, *Orson* hath done nothing but Right, and that which in Duty he ought to do: And as for you, *Haufray* and *Henry*, I see very well, that you are even swollen full of Malice against *Valentine*; wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you attempt no Ill against him; for here I vow, that I would not lose him for the best Baron in my Land, for I have made many Trials of his Love and Faithfulness toward me. And with this Answer *Haufray* and *Henry* departed, altho' sorrowful in Heart, that they could not work their Wills upon him.

They being gone, *Valentine* staid still in the King's Hall, with the other Nobles that were there assembled, and *Orson* went here and there round about the Palace; at last he came unto the Kitchen, where the Cooks were making ready Supper, and being there, he espied two Capons ready for
the

the Fire, made towards the Capons, set upon them, and eat them up raw like a hungry Dog: The Cook seeing him eat up his Capons, took a Pestle that lay by him, and lent him such a Blow, that he made him bow therewith; *Orson* feeling the Blow, stooped down, and took the Cook up between the Legs, and threw him down upon the Ground, and when down, he so belaboured the poor Cook, that he had like to have beat him to death. Tydings was brought unto the King, that *Orson* had slain the Cook, and none durst come near him. The King hearing thereof, willed him to be brought before him, and made Signs unto him that he should be hanged. But *Orson* fetched the Pestle, and made Signs how the Cook had beaten him therewith; wherefore the King commanded, that none should offer him any Injury. So after that, *Valentine* taught him Manners, how he should behave himself; and so they both lived quietly in the Court.

It chanced that not long after the coming of *Valentine* and *Orson* into the Court, that Duke *Savary* sent certain Messengers unto King *Pepin*, which said unto him, Great King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you, to request your Aid against a false and accursed Pagan (called the *Green Knight*) who hath besieged his Confines, and intended to have his Daughter by force of Arms, notwithstanding all the Resistance that he and his Three Sons can make. The King having heard this Message, made this Answer: We agree to give him all the Aid we can. He had no sooner given Answer to the Messengers, but there was come unto the Court another Messenger from *Lyons*, who, after his Duty done unto the King, said thus, Renowned King, assemble your Men of War in readiness, and conduct them towards *Lyons*, for the *Almains* are coming against you in great Numbers; their whole Force consisting of above an Hundred Thousand fighting Men. The King hearing of this sudden News, was much troubled in Mind, and presently called before him the Arch-bishop of *Rhemes*, the Duke of *Myllon Dauglar*, *Gervas* and *Sampson*; these, with others of his Nobles, being assembled, he declared what the Messenger had said, and withal, craved their Counsel what was best to be done, whether to go to *Aquitain*, to succour Duke *Savary*, or to *Lyons*, to resist the *Almains*? Whereunto *Myllon Dauglar* made this Answer: The Duke, I confess, deserveth to be succoured, but yet in two Extreames let us chuse the less; therefore I judge it most meet, first to defend our own Land, that is now in present Danger; and for the Duke, he must be content to take our present Affairs for Answer. So generally it was concluded to go for *Lyons*. With these Words the Messenger that came from Duke *Savary* departed, and carried these Tydings with him to *Aquitain*, which made him very sorry to hear it, because

cause the *Green Knight* had very strongly assailed him. Now here, gentle Reader, I let you understand, for the better ordering your Proceedings, this *Green Knight* here spoken of, was Brother to *Ferragus*, the Giant that kept the Lady *Bellissant* in his Castle, who was the distressed Mother of these two Infants, born in the Wood, called *Valentine* and *Orson*, as it is before declared. Duke *Savary* perceiving no hope of Aid from King *Pepin*, made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions, That all, of what Condition soever, should be ready arm'd against the Morrow after, for he would then go out upon the *Green Knight*, and Fight with him in the Field; all which was accordingly performed. The Day appointed being come, both Armies met, as well Horse as Foot; the Pagans presented themselves in Multitudes, and the *Green Knight* behaved himself so valiantly, that at the first Encounter, with his Battle-Ax, at two Blows, he slew two valiant Knights: Duke *Savary* perceiving him to be so valiant a General, came up to encounter him, and meeting, they assailed each other; but the Duke was ill advised to venture his Body against the *Green Knight*, because it was ever peremptorily reported of him, that he should never be overcome of any, except he were a King's Son, and such a one as had never sucked the Breasts of any Woman. But the *Green Knight* was herein deceived, for he thought it impossible any such Man should be upon the Face of the Earth; but it fell out contrary to his Expectation, as you shall understand.

Let us now return to the two valiant Leaders, who fought long and fiercely; but the Duke ventured so far into the Enemy's Hands, that when he had thought to have retired, he could not; for he was round begirt with such multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken Prisoner, and brought back unto the *Green Knight*, whose Ransom could not be granted for any Gold or Treasure. His Men at Arms perceiving the Duke surprized, returned to *Aquitain*, sore lamenting the Loss of their good Duke. And his three Sons, *Garin* the elder, *Anselme*, and *Garin* the younger, made great Moan to see the hard Hap of their Father.

The Sons having shewed their Sorrows, in comes *Fezon* his Daughter, with this lamenting Out-cry: Alas! in an ill Hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered Death in my Quarrel; and yet there is one thing more troubleth my distempered Soul than all the rest; which is this, That my Father should be held Captive in the Hands of his Enemies, the only way to bring his aged Years with Sorrow to the Grave. Alas! dear Father, your Love to me is the only Cause of all these disastrous Chances. Thus fell *Fezon* into a dangerous Fit of Discontent, insomuch, as with this extremity of Sorrow, she had well nigh finished her

H

Days.

Days, had not the rest of the Ladies attending laboured to comfort her in this great Sorrow, wherewith she was almost overcome. Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with Sorrow, the *Green Knight* triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavillion; and having him there, began to revile him in this disdainful manner: Duke, now thou perceivest that thou art my Vassal, and that I have power over thy Life; this that I speak thou canst not deny, therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my sacred Lips; either give me thy Daughter *Fezon* to Wife, and so redeem thy Life, or else I will have her against thy Will, leading her amongst rough Mountains, and there royally Crown her Queen of those craggy Mansions. The Duke hearing these proud Menaces, began thus to reply: Proud and insolent *Sarazen*, know this, that I will never give Consent that thou have my Daughter, except thou also subscribe to be Baptized. The *Green Knight* hearing him say so, reply'd: Urge me not further, for I am wholly bound to *Mahomet*, wherefore once again I tell thee, except thou yield to my Demand, I will first make thee finish thy Days miserably, and afterwards consume all *Aquatain* to Ashes; and after that put to the Sword all that come in my way, Men, Women, and Children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus resolute, began again in this manner: Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy Cruelty; for I had rather rely on their Power than thine. The *Green Knight* hearing him say so, began afresh with him on this manner: Grave Duke, leave off these thy sad Laments, and hearken unto my Relation, and Resolution also; and this it is: I am not ashamed to let you understand; that thy Daughter's Beauty hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recal my threatned Sentence of Death against thee, out of which captivate Affections towards thy Daughter, I am forced to yield to Condition, That thou shalt find out a Knight within the space of Six Months to encounter me; and if it so happen, that by strength of Arms he can conquer me, I vow by *Mahomet*, to send thee back into thy own Country, without wasting of the same: But if it happen that I prove Conqueror over that Knight, then shalt thou willingly resign thy fair Daughter into my Hand, to be my lawful Wife. These Articles being produced, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto; so the Truce was accordingly proclaimed. These Agreements thus concluded, the *Green Knight* gave leave that Duke *Savary* should depart, upon Conditions, that he should Swear to keep Covenants, not only for the present, but during his Life. The Duke being thus delivered, made his repair to *Aquitain*, whither being come, he caused open Proclamation to be made of those Conditions whereunto he had before subscribed concerning his said Daughter; and withal the Truce taken

ken for the space of Six Months. His Counsellors hearing what was past, advised him to dispatch Messengers into all Lands, with these Advertisements following: If there be any Knight whatsoever, that durst Encounter the *Green Knight* for the Love of the beauteous Lady *Fezon*, he should lay down his Gage, and so be answered. These Letters were sent into Twelve Christian Lands: What followed you may better learn by the succeeding Chapter.

Chap. XI. *How divers Knights arrived at Aquitain, at the solemn Joust there holden, to bear away the Love of the beauteous Lady Fezon. How Haufray and Henry, accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away the Life of Valentine.*

DURING this time of the Truce between Duke *Savary* and the *Green Knight*, King *Pepin* had taken his Journey against his Enemies at *Lyons*, accompanied with a mighty Host; being come before the City with his Forces, he set upon King *Lampatris*, who had also brought into the Field a Hundred Thousand Men: *Lampatris* was King of *Sires*, *Holland*, and *Frizeland*, with the County of *Monemarch*; in which stood a very strong City, whereunto they withdrew themselves; King *Pepin* getting knowledge thereof, strongly besieged it, insomuch, that at last they were constrained to yield, or suffer Banishment; but resolving upon the Safety of their Lives, they yielded the City, which the King bestowed upon *Guy*, Marshal of *France*.

The Wars being ended, *Pepin* returned into *France* with all his warlike Soldiers; being arrived at *Paris*, it was told him, Duke *Savary* had taken Truce with the *Green Knight*, and the manner how; whereat the King laughing, said, in the Presence of his Barons, Who is he amongst you that would win fair *Fezon* for his Love, he must take upon him a Combate against the *Green Knight*, whom if he conquer and overcome, the Duke will not only give him his Daughter, but one half of his Possessions; and that this is true, behold Letters written with his own Hand. Every one of these worthy Knights viewed these Letters, yet none of them all durst undertake the Enterprize save only *Valentine*, who perceiving them all refuse it, said thus unto the King, Dread Sovereign, if it please you to give me leave, I will adventure my Strength upon that *Green Knight*, and will gladly undertake the Task: Again, I have a great Desire to leave *France*, for I long to take in hand some tedious Journey, to find out the Mother that bore me, and from whence I am descended. *Valentine*, said the King,

take thou no Care whence thou art, for it resteth in my Power to make thee greater than any Man within my Court: And for that I find thee willing to go to *Aquitain*, I freely give thee Leave; but on Condition, That after thou hast tried thy Manhood with the *Green Knight*, thou return, if thou escape with Life: *Valentine* yielded to the King in his Demand, and so, taking Leave, he shortly after prepared for his Journey. When *Eglantine* heard that he would go to *Aquitain*, she was very sorrowful, and at last, in the midst of Tears, sent for *Valentine* to come to her; *Valentine* promised the Messenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed; and being come, she burst out in Tears, saying, Ah *Valentine*! now I do well perceive that all my Joys are at an end. and that you are resolved to leave this Country of *France*: Ah! would it might be my good Hap to go with you, for there is not a Man living whom I hold so dear as you, and, were not I curbed by my Birth, I would make thee my Husband. And that thou maist the better perceive my true Intent, take thou here the Keys of my Treasure, and take what pleaseth thee, for there is great store; and the Gods give thee Succour in all thy Knightly Enterprizes. Lady, quoth he, Silver and Gold I need none; but that which most of all distempereth my Breast, is, That I cannot learn of my Descent: Moreover, one thing more troubleth me as much as the other, which is, that I bare upon one of my Shoulders a Cross, and is of the Colour of Gold, of which Sign I know not what to gather; but resolve thus, never to rest in any Place until such time as I have found out the Place of my Nativity. And so, loving Lady, I take my Leave, earnestly requesting you to stop the Current of those Tears: And withal, I vow, that if I find my Birth answerable to the Majesty from whence you are descended, to take you as my only Choice to Wife, forsaking all other. On the other side, having found out my Birth, and perceiving it not answerable to yours, I would not be your Husband for all the Wealth in the World; for malicious Tongues in time to come will say, Where's the Brethren, Sisters, or Cousins of this Runagade, that hath presumed to match himself unto the Daughter of our mighty King *Pepin*? Having spok'n these Words, he departed, leaving *Eglantine* full of Grief. But when she had some little time sat still, she could not be satisfied, but offered to follow him whithersoever he went; and in conclusion, brought him some part of his Way, being accompanied with divers of the Nobility. *Valentine* being departed, *Haufray* and *Henry* were right glad, privily conspiring how to bring it to pass, that he and *Orson*, who went along with him, might by Treachery come unto an untimely Death.

Valentine

Valentine and *Orson* having taken their Leave of King *Pepin*, addressed themselves for *Aquitain*. Being on their Way, *Haufray* and *Henry* consulted together, joining to their Aid a Third, who was Cousin to them, how they might lye in Ambush to set upon *Valentine* and *Orson*, to work their Destruction: which Number was about Thirty able Men. This Plot being thus come to Perfection, charge was given to these warlike Men, that if they could not overcome *Valentine* and his Brother *Orson* to Death, yet they should lay hold on *Valentine*, and keep him safe. The Place appointed where this should be done, was a very large and great Forrest, thro' which they must needs pass. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, it chanced that *Valentine* came riding along, with *Orson* running by his side swifter than any Horse; who coming near the Place where these Men lay, forth steps their Captain, called *Gryger*, accompanied with all his Troop.



with their Weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized *Valentine* on the sudden, and to have put him to death: Now this fierce Traytor lent him such a mortal Blow, that the Sword pierced quite thro' his Armour, and entered into the Flesh, insomuch as the Blood followed the Blow; and withal uttered

tered these unwelcome Words, *Valentine*, either yield thy self Captive, or receive thy Death. *Valentine*, as a Man all amazed, was somewhat moved at the Sight of his Blood, and considering how he was encompass'd with a Multitude of his Enemies, recommending his Innocency unto the Gods, at last spoke on this manner: My Lords, speaking to *Haufray* and *Henry*, I see well that you have determined my Days by Treason, and without Cause on my part given; but yet I assure you, that before I yield my self into your Hands, or before this Day's Sun be set, I shall send some of you here present into such a Country, that you shall scarcely ever return again to bring Tydings of your Valour, And therewithal drew forth his Sword, and gave the first that encountered him such a Blow upon the Head, that he clave him to the Teeth, and there he lay for dead: After that, he betook him towards the rest, with such Violence, that at every Stroak one fell before him. *Orson* perceiving his Brother thus to lay about him, began to rouse himself, and with his rough Hands and piercing Tallons, rent and tore all that came in his way, and so bit them with his Teeth, that they fell groveling upon the Ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his Feet, *Valentine* seeing *Orson* thus bestir himself, held up his Bloody Sword, defending himself, and offending his Enemies so valiantly, that they all forsook them, and durst not stay within their sight: *Grygar*, their Captain, perceiving all his Men thus killed and overcome, cryed out with a loud Voice on this manner: *Valentine*, yet I wish thee yield, or else look for nothing but Death. *Valentine* hearing these insulting Words, made towards *Grygar*, and in a furious manner assailed him, but being too forward, he plunged himself into the Throng, that he was enclosed round about, keeping off *Orson* with their long Spears, Being thus begirt with Enemies, he still behaving himself so valiantly, that none durst lay Hands upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was overcome with Multitudes, and being not able any longer to wield his Sword, they took him, bound him, and carry'd him away. *Orson* perceiving his Brother thus posted away, ran after, making a hideous Noise; but he could not over take them, for they rid swifter then he could run, and having at last lost Sight of them, knew not which way he were best to take, *Grygar* commanded them to follow after *Orson*, and bring him back, either alive or dead; but in vain they followed, for he out run them, and so escaped. Those that had the Charge of *Valentine*, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of a Forrest, kept by a notable Thief, who was Cousin-german to *Grygar*; *Valentine* being entered the Castle-gate, they entreated him evilly, and conveyed him to a deep Dungeon, which grieved him

to the Heart, infomuch that he burst out into these Speeches : Alas ! now is that come upon me which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the Hands of my deadliest Enemies ; and those that have ever sought my Life. Farewel King *Pepin*, for I fear I shall never see thee more ; and that which most vexeth me, is that they shall never understand the Truth of my Death, for the Stench of this loathsome Dungeon doth even stop my Breath. Farewel *Orson*, for thou hast already suffered Death for my sake ; and more could no Man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my natural Brother. Farewel my dear Mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my Hopes are all frustrated, for I now must dye without the Knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus he lamented, whilst his Enemies determine what shall be done to him : Some were of Opinion to put him to death ; others, that he should be committed to a perpetual Imprisonment, But *Grygar*, being Lord over the rest, would not yield he should be put to death, but rather to keep him in Prison, till *Haufray* and *Henry* have received Knowledge of their Proceedings. Having thus set down their Resolution, they determine to take their Journey towards *Paris*, where the King then lay ; to meet with *Haufray* and *Henry*, who entertained them royally, being right glad that *Valentine* was fallen into their Hands. Now understand, that *Orson* all that Night was fain to rest within the Woods, lying down at the Root of a Tree ; the Morning being come, he took his Way towards *Paris*, never resting till he came into the Presence of King *Pepin* : Being come thither, by Signs and Tokens he shewed the manner of the taking of *Valentine* ; but yet for all the hast he made, *Grygar* arrived at the Court before him. *Haufray* and *Henry* were much grieved that *Orson* had escaped ; but all their Comfort was he could not speak, thinking thereby for to escape from Mistrust and Suspicion, but their Hopes were soon laid in the Dust, as hereafter will appear.

The nex Day the two Brethren had appointed that *Grygar* should return in all hast to the Castle, to put *Valentine* to Death, thereby thinking all their Treason might pass undiscovered. But see how it came about, that all their Counsels were quite overthrown ; for *Orson* came unto the King's Palace that Morning, and growing towards Dinner-time, the Tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons, and Knights, came in, and every Man took his Place. The King being set, and casting his Eyes about, suddenly espied *Orson*, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that *Valentine* was not far off, but it fell out contrary. *Orson* ran through the Hall, making a lamentable Noise, and knock-

knocking his Breast in a most hideous and fearful manner, which drove the King in ten Thousand Fears, and all the rest who beheld this lamentable Spectacle. *Orson* ran along by the Table, looking very fiercely upon every Man; and making many fearful Signs: Amongst the rest, at the last he lighted upon the Traytor *Grygar*, who espying *Orson* hung his Head in his Bosom: *Orson* having once got the Sight of him, run furiously upon him, and gave him such a sturdy Stroak, that he smote off his Ears; after he began to lay upon his Face, insomuch that he put out one of his Eyes, and broke one of his Teeth. *Grygar* being thus wounded, began to cry out for Help; but *Orson* hearing him make such an Uproar, ran again upon him, and gave him such a sturdy Stroak, that he felled him unto the Earth, overthrowing Tables, Meat, and all that stood before him; which drove all the Beholders into Admiration: And had he not been rescued by a valiant Prince that then sat at Board, he had never gone from that Place alive: The Prince having rescued him, began to say unto the King on this manner: Mighty King, consider into what Danger this Man is fallen by the Fury of this wild Man: and either let him dye for this presumptuous Fact, or no Man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so, replied, We will consider the Cause, and as we find it, so we will proceed against him: Bring him hither before us, that we may question the Cause of the Fact. *Orson* was upon these words brought before the King, and he demanded, How he durst presume so far into the Presence of his Majesty? *Orson* answered by Signs how he had slain *Valentine* in the Forrest; and that he would be Revenged for his Death, on that inhumane Traytor *Grygar*; and withal closed his Fist, and put it to his Mouth in great Rage, in token of Defiance. King *Pepin* perceiving by his Actions, the Cause of the matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barons on this manner: My Lords, you see, as well as I, that this wild Man hath challenged *Grygar* to fight him; therefore tell me your Opinions, what is best to be done in this Case, for I cannot chuse but marvel why this wild Man should find out *Grygar* above all the rest of the Knights here assembled; therefore let every Man freely speak, for I much doubt some hidden Secret to lye therein; and for my part, I could willingly give Consent that it should be tryed forth by Combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barons agreed to the Verdict that the King had passed. So the Battle was determined, and *Grygar* was brought to the King, to the Intent he should undergo the Challenge against the wild Man; *Grygar* hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful, and sad, and not without Cause, for he fore-saw that his Treason would
come

come to light ; and therewithal cast an ill-favoured Eye on *Haufray*. *Henry* perceiving *Grygar* stand so amazed, said, *Grygar* fear not, for I promise thee, however it fall out, that no Danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will work your Peace, so thou wilt Swear never to reveal the Fact. Yea, quoth he, I well perceive how the Case will go with me, I must suffer a reproachful Death for your sakes. Having thus said, he left *Henry*, and returned again unto the King, saying, Mighty King, let me make one Request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous Task ; the Reason chiefly moving me, is, that inso-much that it is not Man against Man, whereby a Knight may win Honour, but a wild Savage to encounter with a Man, and no Knight : I think I may safely, so your Grace be pleased, refuse the Combat. Nay, quoth the King, no Excuse in this Case can be admitted, for the Combat is granted, not only by my Advice, but also by the Counsel of my Barons ; and the Reason moving us to grant it, was, that Treason long lying hid might come to light. *Grygar* hearing it thus concluded on, grew more into Dis-pair ; but *Haufray* being there, comforted him again on this manner : Doubt not, for you have Equity on your Part ; and besides, I will see you well armed in all Points, fitting your Knightly Race. When *Orson* gathered by Signs, that he should fight with this Traytor, he was right glad ; and withal, made shews unto the King, that *Valentine* was dead ; where-at the King grew wondrous sad. And fain would *Orson* have been upon the Back of *Grygar*, but that the King commanded him to be taken away ; making Signs unto him, that he should strike no more, till the Time they were to meet for the Tryal of the Truth. Again, the King called unto *Grygar*, to make hast to arm himself ; *Grygar* loath to venture his Life upon so un-certain Ground, began once again to speak unto the King, saying, Most dread Sovereign, I have been long Servitor about your Person, both in War and Peace ; but you reward me not accordingly, inso-much, as you compel me to fight against a Man that hath neither Sense, Reason, nor in-truth, humane Shape. *Grygar*, said the King, if the Truth be on your side, you need not fear, for you shall enter into the Field well armed. Again, you shall be well Mounted, he on Foot ; nor shall he bear any Weapon. The Right, you say, is on your side ; wherefore maintain that Right, and shew your Valour ; for the Sentance of Combat may not be recalled.

Chap. XII. *How Orson and Grygar fought together ; and how Orson returning Victor, caused Grygar to confess the Treason, who was after Hanged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon. How Grygar being vanquished by Orson, confessed his Treason to King Pepin ; and how Haufray and Henry, had been the only Plotters thereof against the worthy Valentine.*

THE Place of the Combat being appointed, Orson attended in readiness for his Enemy ; in the End, Grygar being well armed by *Haufray* and *Henry*, took his leave of them on this wise : My Lords, in your Cause am I delivered over to death ; evil was the Day when I began this Enterprize. Hold thy Peace, said *Henry*, for I will defend thee from the Sentence of my Father, and work thy Safety, so thou wilt be secret. Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted, went towards the Palace Gate, where this Combat was to be effected : the Hour being come, the King repaired to the Window, all the Nobles in the Court being assembled ; the Judges where appointed, that no Wrong should be offered on either part : So Grygar being entered the Lists, he espied Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying, Villain, thou hast offer'd me great Wrong, in putting out one of my Eyes ; but e'er I part, I will make thee acknowledge that Wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me. Orson perceiving whereunto his proud Speeches tended, shewed him his Nails, and gnashed his Teeth ; whereat Grygar suddenly couched his Spear, and run upon him ; Orson espying the Spear bent against him, gave back, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his Mark, and ran his Spear fast in the Ground ; Orson taking this Advantage, suddenly seized the Spear into his own Hands, and having hold thereof, gave his Enemy such a Stroak therewith, that he astonied him. Grygar feeling the Fury of the Stroak, set Spurs to his Horse, and rid like a mad Man about the Field ; Orson ran after him with a grinning Countenance, making Signs unto the King, that he would e'er long force him to yield unto him. Grygar fearing the Danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured out these Words : Ah, *Haufray* ! for thy Cause and sake I am thus delivered over to death. Long and tedious was the Fight ; but Grygar could never so much as wound the wild-Man. At last Orson cast away his Spear, and came to Grygar in such manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad and furious, that he overthrew his Rider, and with the Fall he lost his Shield ; which Orson espying, took it up, and put it on his own Back ; after he came unto Grygar's

gar's Horse, and got upon him, riding round about the Field, and making ill-favoured Signs and Tokens; insomuch as all the Beholders stood as Men dismayed. Amongst the rest, the King appeared very sorrowful; and at last began thus to speak: My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this Fight will grow; but it is my Opinion, that there is Treason smothered, and not yet come to light. Orson having a great while ranged about the Field on Horse-back after his Enemy, at last forsook his Horse, and encountred Grygar on Foot, insomuch, that he lent him such a Blow, that he smote him to the Earth; afterward he leap'd upon him, and disarmed him of his Weapon; then the next Blow he struck, he smote off one of his Arms; next on the Body he gave him such a Wound, that he cut him even to the Reins of his Back. Grygar having received all these Wounds, cryed out most pittifully, insomuch that every one requested he might have a Priest to confess him of his Sins. The Guard that was appointed for the Field, hearing these Out-crys, sent out a worthy Knight, to demand what he would have done? Unto whom Grygar said, Sir, bring me before the King's Majesty, and before him, and the rest of this Assembly, I shall reveal the Treasons whereof I am guilty, from point to point effectually.

At last Grygar was brought before the King, who asked Pardon for his high Offence; and in the Presence of all the Beholders, told him, That the only Actors in this traiterous Plot, where Haufray and Henry his Sons, and by their Means he had taken Valentine, and put him in Prison, and there meant to put him to death. The King having heard his Tale, and perceiving the whole Truth of this Plot, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next Tree he came too. He having thus given Sentence against Grygar, called for his Horse, and being mounted, made all hast possible unto the Prison where Valentine lay. Orson perceiving the King would undertake such a Journey, addressed himself to run along by the King's Horse, leading him the Way, and making many Signs of Joy and Gladness. The King marking well all the wild Man's Behaviour, often spake unto his Lords in this manner: My Lords, it is wonderful that this wild Man should bear such an ardent Affection towards Valentine; and besides, it strikes me into a thousand Imaginations. Now you must know, that the King had great Cause to love this wild Man, for that he was his natural Nephew, tho' as yet not revealed; neither was the Time yet come to bring it to light, till that by Clerimond, Sister to the Gyant Ferragus, it should be made manifest; for at that time Clerimond had a Castle, and in it a Head of Brass, composed by Negromancy; which Head told unto Cle-

rimond, all that should happen unto her all her Life; and also all that ever she had done in her fore-passed time: Besides, this same Head was composed by such wondrous Magick-art, that it should never leave of speaking, until the noblest Knight in the World should enter the Castle, and then the Head utterly to give over, and never to speak more. This fell out upon *Valentine*, whom the fair Lady *Clerimond* shall take to Husband, and for whom she shall endure a World of Miseries, as in the succeeding History you shall understand. So leave we this, and return back again to King *Pepin* where before we left him: King *Pepin* goeth on towards the Forrest to save the Life of *Valentine*; and *Orson* being with him, brought him unto the Castle wherein he was imprisoned: Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the King, barred the Gates; for so they were commanded by the residue within the Castle. The King perceiving he could not enter in Peace, commanded his Attendance to enter by Force, and so they did: Being gotten in, they seized upon all the Traitors, and bound them fast in Chains; having so done, they went into the Dungeon where *Valentine* lay bound, and brought him forth unto the King: *Valentine* spying the King, fell upon his Knees, yielding him Thanks for that extraordinary Kindness shewed to him, in delivering him out of a Hell of Darkness, and Fear of Death. The Barons also that attended the King, welcomed him with great Joy and Gladness, telling him all that had hapned, and how that *Orson* had fought with the Traytor *Grygar* in his Quarrel, and overcome him. *Valentine* hearing this, embraced *Orson*. Afterwards the King commanded, that all the Traytors should be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after spake thus unto *Valentine*, Seeing it is thy good Hap to be thus miraculously delivered out of the Hands of thine Enemies, I would advise thee to abide with me. But he replied, Dread Sovereign, pardon me, for I will never return again till I have found out my Parents of whence I am descended; and so humbly I take my Leave of your Majesty.

So here we leave King *Pepin*, and only look upon *Valentine* and *Orson*, who are taking their Way to *Aquitain*, to fight the *Green Knight*, a Man feared of all Men: For I must call to remembrance that of which I told you before, that he should never be vanquished by any, save only by a King's Son, that had never sucked Woman. Being come to *Aquitain*, the People flocked from all Parts, to see the rough and unmanly Shape of *Orson*; but *Valentine* seeing their Folly, made him a Jacket of Steel; when *Orson* had it on, he was much offended thereat, and would have thrown it away, but he much feared *Valentine*, and would do any thing he commanded.

ed. *Orson* having his Jacket upon his Back, looked much upon himself, and at last became proud thereof, and set his Countenance according to his Heart. Now as they were riding on their Way, *Valentine* espied a fair Squire making much Lamentation; *Valentine* beholding him well, said thus unto him, Friend, what aileth you to shed these Tears? Have you sustained any Wrong either by Man or Beast? Tell me what may be the Cause, and I promise you the best of my Power to relieve you. Alas! said he, thereof I make no Doubt; but know this, that the Cause of my Laments, is the Loss of a most kind and gentle Master; a Man of the greatest Valour in *Christendom*. How have you lost him? (quoth *Valentine*) Sir as I was travelling towards *Aquitain*, to fight with the *Green Knight*, thinking thereby to win the fairest Lady in the World, called *Fezon*, which Lady it is not possible for any one to have, except first he overcome in single Combat the *Green Knight*: Divers valiant Knights have there miscarried; and when he conquered them, he caused them to be hanged on a Tree; and the Number that are already dead, are Thirty Two, yielding no shew of Mercy towards any. Is all this true, quoth *Valentine*, that thou hast told me? Why then, sure he is some Devil in Man's Shape, that doth such strange Exploits. But towards *Aquitain* am I journeying, to try my Fortune against him, for I have heard much of the Lady *Fezon*. Ah! Sir, (quoth the Squire) go not thither to lose your Life by such a Devil. Squire (said *Valentine*) I will go forward, and mean to cope with that famous *Green Knight*; but if I can escape him, I will first talk with the Lady *Fezon*, and take her Advertisment.

Orson gathering some understanding of their Talk, made Signs to *Valentine*, that he might fight with the *Green Knight*, and that he would make Love to the Lady *Fezon*; whereat he laughed heartily. By this time thinking them to come near the City of *Aquitain*, standing upon a Hill; and meeting with an old Man, he questioned with him, what City that was before him? Marry (quoth he) it is *Aquitain*. Now tell me (said *Valentine*) where resteth the *Green Knight*? Why, Sir, said he, without the City; I think you are going to fight with him. Ay, quoth *Valentine*. Ah! Sir, (said the old Man) undertake not so foul a Folly, for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither, my Son, and stand thou on this little Hill, and I shall shew thee above Forty famous Knights hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome: Also there is now, but Fifteen Days to be accomplished, and the Duke of *Aquitain* must part with his fair Daughter *Fezon*, to his great Grief, and the Overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father, quoth *Valentine*, the Gods defend her. He had no sooner spoke these Words, but

there

there came another ancient Man of Fourscore Years of Age, in the Habit of a Pilgrim; this Man was that *Blandiman*, 'Squire to the distressed *Bellisant*, and he it was that led the Lady *Bellisant* into the Castle of *Ferragus* the Giant, as before we have declared; *Valentine* espying him, demanded of him whence he was, and whence he came? Sir, quoth the Pilgrim, from *Constantinople*; but I could not enter into the City, by reason a Pagan Souldan had begirt it with a Siege; neither could I come to deliver the Message on which I am sent; wherefore I thought it my safest Course to return. Pilgrim, quoth *Valentine*, what thinkest thou of the Green Knight, is it not possible he should be Overcome? No, said the Pilgrim, I advise you not to follow the Enterprize; for if there were a whole Hundred of you, he would see the End of you all. Father, whether go you? (said *Valentine*) Sir, I take my readiest Way to *Paris*, for I have a Message to King *Pepin*, from a Sister of his, named *Bellisant*, that long hath been banished from *Constantinople* wrongfully; and now is the good Lady in the House of a Gyant, that keepeth her, and useth her honourably; intending to know King *Pepin*'s Mind, whether he be consented to those Wrongs done unto her, for he well knoweth she is a vertuous Lady, and for her sake, offereth to put himself in single Combat with the Emperor of *Greece*, for that he hath so wrongfully banished her. Palmer, quoth *Valentine*, I pray thee return back again with me to *Aquitain*, for thither am I going, to Fight with the *Green Knight*: If the Gods give me Victory against him, I will accompany thee into *France*, for I shall tell thee, only for the Love I bear unto King *Pepin*, undertake I this Fight, for he hath been the Means of my Preservation, and as a Father unto me. Therefore to him I dedicate all my Labours, and rest wholly at his Command. Sir, quoth *Blandiman*, to this Motion I will never consent, for my Lady hath put me in trust to dispatch her Affairs, and I will discharge the Duty of a trusty Servant towards her; and so, taking my leave, I commend you to the Protection of the Gods. The Palmer being gone, *Valentine* looked long after him, and not without Cause, but he wist not why; for this was the Man that had born a Part of his Mothers Exiles. Well, *Valentine* took on his Journey, and after some few Days, came near to the City of *Aquitain*. *Valentine* beheld the City very earnestly, and passing on, he espyed a pleasant Fountain, thither he went, and alighting from his Horse, laid him down under a Tree, to refresh him; and *Orson* was his Keeper all the while. Anon he awak'd and prepared to take Horse again, but suddenly arrived at the same Fountain a most curious Knight, proud, and of so haughty a Stomach, that he was stiled the Proud Knight, and withal, so

Fierce

Fierce and Resolute, that he never asked Question of any Man; yet if he whom he met, saluted him not, he presently killed him: This proud Knight came to the Fountain, and *Valentine* beholding him, said never a Word; and *Orson* also gazed fiercely on him. The proud Knight was angry in his Heart, and approached near unto *Orson*, and gave him such a Blow, that the Blood issued out of his Mouth; *Orson* feeling the Blow smart, suddenly took him and threw him on the Earth, and presently espying a Knife at the Knight's Girdle, smote him therewith into the Body so deep, that he was nothing but Blood. The Knight feeling himself wounded, cryed out aloud, whereunto *Valentine* coming in, rescued the Knight out of *Orson*'s Hands, and said, Fair Knight, you have offered great Wrong to smite a poor wild Man on this rude Manner, who can speak never a Word. With that, the proud Knight began thus roughly to answer *Valentine*: Proud Miscreant, why then dost thou not Salute me? And therewith drew forth a Glave, thinking to have Smitten him; *Valentine* seeing the Blow, drew forth his Sword, and struck at the proud Knight with such Violence, that he struck him dead. The proud Knight being dead, his Men fled with all the hast they could to *Aquitain*, bearing Tydings of their Master's Death. Duke *Savary* hearing thereof, was greatly displeased, for he was his Cousin. Amongst the rest, *Valentine* understood of the Lamentation that was for the Death of the proud Knight beside the Fountain; whereupon he suddenly mounted and entred the City, where he lodg'd in a Burgeſs's House, whereby it came to the Ears of Duke *Savary*, that he had slain his Cousin. And the Duke commanded, that *Valentine* and his Brother *Orson* should be brought before him; so being come into the Presence of the Duke, he began on this Manner: Friend, of whence are you? What Prince do you serve? And whether be ye Knights, or no? Sir, said *Valentine*, I am a Knight, and owe my Duty and Service to the famous *Pepin of France*. Then said the Duke unto him, You have slain my Cousin. 'Tis true, said he, and so I should have done, had it been my own Kinsman, for he was of so high a Stomach, that he disdained to speak to any Man; and smote so furiously at my Companion, that he had near killed him; which I perceiving, drew forth my Sword and slew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a Stranger in the City, and hither am I come to Combat with the Green Knight; as also to behold that beauteous Lady *Fezon*, whom the whole World admires: Wherefore I think it a Law of Equity, for Strangers to pass up and down in Safety. Consider, I have shewed you the Cause of my coming. When the Duke heard *Valentine* say so; he said unto him, Knight, right well hast thou answered me; and seeing my Cousin hath come by this,

more

more by Pride than Courage, I am right sorrowful, and so pass it over, and pardon thy Deed ; but in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to Combat the *Green Knight*, come you into my Palace, and there you shall behold the Beauty for which you thus far adventure : Moreover, that you may see, that you are not come alone, you shall behold Fifteen Knights to accompany you, and now arrived for the Love of the Lady *Fezon*, and to try their Valour against the said *Green Knight*, their Enemy. Go, I say, to my Palace, salute my Daughter, as my Custom is to Strangers, before they adventure their Persons in Battle with the *Green Knight* ; and having presented your selves before her in the sign of Love, you shall receive from her a Ring of Gold. Sir, quoth *Valentine*, I shall be ready to do all Rites and Customs ; and besides, I will obey you in all things whatsoever it shall please you to command.

This Conference ended, the Duke went into the Castle, accompanied with *Valentine* and *Orson* ; having entred the Hall where the Knights were assembled, *Valentine* beheld the Lady sitting amongst them ; and making his Way unto her, with all Duty and Reverence, at last he saluted her thus: Lady, you whose Beauty and Fame is spread thro' the World, the Gods preserve thee from the *Green Knight*, who I dare boldly avouch is not worthy to touch your super-excellent Lips. Moreover, dear Lady, may it please you to understand, that *Pepin*, the mighty King of *France*, hath sent me hither, to present to you the most noble Man that liveth on the Earth ; wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no Man, nor any Weapon, albeit he cannot speak ; wherefore I assure you, that the *Green Knight* is not able to withstand his mighty Force, nor make any Resistance against him. Sir, quoth the Lady, I yield unto the King of *France* Thanks ; as also to you, that have taken such Pains to present such a one before me : But say, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better cloathed ? For methinks he is of an excellent Person, well formed, strait, and of a hardy Countenance ; and if he were washed and bathed, his Flesh would be both white and soft. Lady, said *Valentine*, he never wore Garment till very lately, and then I caused this Jacket to be made : Moreover, I assure you, that when he came first into *Paris*, he came a naked Man, and his Flesh was so hard, that he neither feared Wind nor Cold. While he was speaking these words, *Fezon* beheld him very wishly, for she was in love with him. But *Valentine* again thus speak, Lady, for my self I must say something also, therefore, know this, that only for the Love of you I have ventured in this Climate, to see if Fortune will so much favour me, that I may bear you away from all Comers, by force of Arms ; and yet fair Lady, one thing

thing more I have to utter unto you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto my self, that I will never return again into *France*, till I have proved my Fortune with the *Green-Knight*, and with him do I intend to cope before I part hence; and either deliver him over into your Hands as conquered, or suffer Death, as many before me have. Alas! Knight, said the Lady, put not your self in Danger for my sake, for methinks it is a Folly in any Man, to endanger himself for the Good of another. Again, there be many valiant Knights have miscarried in seeking my Love, and I the unhappiest living, to see these unfortunate Days. Lady quoth he, what I have vowed I mean to accomplish. Why then, fair Knight, God be thy speed; and therewithal drew forth two Rings of Gold, giving *Valentine* the one, and *Orson* the other. Also they sat down at the Table amongst the other Knights, and were welcomed with great Feasting. Being set at the Table, *Fezon* still fixed her Eye on *Orson*, and *Orson* upon her, as it were interchangeably glancing Love-looks one to another, with exceeding gracious Aspects. Now in the midst of all their Feasting, the *Green Knight*, as his Custom was, came thundering at the Gates, only to have a Sight of the beautiful Lady *Fezon*, for you shall understand, that such were the Conditions between him and the Duke, that every Day it should be lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady without contradiction. Being entred the great Hall, his manner was, to cry out with a loud Voice, saying, Valiant Duke of *Aquitain*, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me for the Love of this Lady? The Duke answered, Yea, I have yet within my Palace sixteen valiant Knights that mean to try their Fortune upon thee, before they depart my Country. Then said the *Green-Knight*, let me see them; and likewise the fair Lady *Fezon*. Enter, said the Duke, for thou hast free Liberty. Herewithal the *Green Knight* entered the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights one after another; at last, when he had gone thro' them all, he began to speak to them on this manner: Lords, Eat and Drink, and make merry, for to morrow will be your last; and know that it will fall out to your share to be hanged on the top of my Tree, as many before you have been served. *Valentine* well marking his high words, grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him: Proud Knight, these Vaunts might well have lain smothered in thy Breast; for I tell thee, this Day is come hither a Knight that will hold thee tack, more than any that ever yet encountered thee; and whereas thou triumphantly hast conquered many, he it is shall vanquish thee, and leave thy dead Corps a Prey for reavenous Beasts. Now *Orson* understood that *Valentine* spoke all this of him, and also knew this to be

the *Green Knight*, by whom so many valiant Men had lost their Lives; infomuch, that he saluted him with a fierce Visage, and whetting his Teeth, leap'd from the Table, and taking the *Green Knight* by the Middle, threw him upon his Neck, as if he had been a little Child, and having him at that Advantage, espying a Wall, threw the *Green Knight* with such Violence against the same, that all the Beholders thought he had broken his Neck, for he lay as dead, and so set him down at the Table as before; and in a laughing Gesture, made Signs, that he would bear upon his Neck Three such as the *Green Knight*. At this sudden Action of *Orson*, all the Knights there assembled began to laugh, and coming one towards the other, said, Now is he come indeed, that shall be the Overthrow of the *Green Knight*. But we cannot chuse but lament the woful Chance that shall befall the Lady *Fezon*, for he cannot speak, and yet is worthy of all Honour amongst the Valiantest. The Lady, on the other side, beholding his Valour, was instantly overcome with the Love of *Orson*, that only conquered her Heart, and left all the rest hopeless of ever gaining the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the *Green Knight* was again recovered, and counting it a Deed of Courage, began thus to say, Lords, this wild Man hath deceived my Trust, for he came upon me unawares, without saying a Word. But I think good to let you understand, that in the Morning I shall be better provided; and to the End I may make him an Example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibet on purpose, higher and stronger than for any that have been vanquished; and thereon I will hang his beastly Corps for Beasts and Birds to make their Prey.

Chap. XIII. *How Orson encountered the Kreen Knight, and what followed thereof; also how Valentine attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.*

Orson perceiving the *Green Knight* displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to Chatter, making Signs, that he would meet him on the Morrow, and fight with him, and in Token thereof, took off his Hood, and threw it on the Ground as his Gage: Which *Valentine* seeing, speak thus to the *Green Knight*: Sir, the wild Man challengeth you, and in Token thereof hath thrown down his Gage; whereof, if your Stomach serve, I advise you to take it up. Hereat the *Green Knight* fretted so exceedingly, that he replied never a Word. Duke *Savary* being present, said unto him, Sir Knight, I well perceive that the Battle will grow strong between the wild Man and you, and I think he will hold you tough Play: Wherefore

if you chance to conquer him, you may well report of your Valour throughout the World, for he hath tried some part of his Courage already; and in vanquishing him, you need not stand in Fear of any. The *Green Knight* hereat more and more enraged, swore by *Mahomet*, That e'er the Morrow Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his Strength, for he should never return again from the Field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the rest: And with these Words left the Castle, and betook him to his Pavillion. He being departed, the rest of the Knights still remained with the Lady *Fezon*, making great Joy, and saying one to another, That the Day was come, that the *Green Knight* should meet with his Match. On the other side, Fame had spread abroad the worthy Act of *Orson* the Savage, upon the *Green Knight*, that multitudes of People came to see and behold him; infomuch, that the Duke commanded the Gates to be shut. *Orson* perceiving the People so abundantly to approach, and hearing the Noise, leap'd up into a Window to behold them; so that they willing to see him, and he desirous to see them, at Night they all departed; and Supper ended, they passed the rest of the Night in Merriments, and so to Bed. *Valentine* being brought to his Chamber, went to Bed, making Signs to *Orson* to lye down by him; but he not regarded his Kindness, laid him down upon the Ground, according to his wonted Use, and so passed away that Night. Morning being come, *Valentine* and *Orson* went into the Hall, where they found the fair Lady *Fezon*, accompanied with the other Knights, holding a Dispute among themselves, who should first Fight with the *Green Knight*. At last stood up a worthy Knight of *France*, called *Galeram*, and said, Lords, so you be pleased, I am the Man intend the first Tryal: To this they agreed, and presently they armed him. Being armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave in all Joy; and she to requite his Kindness, gave him free leave, wishing the Gods to preserve and keep him in all Danger, so that he may return as Conqueror. The Knight most humbly thanked her, and so took Horse, and hasten'd him towards the Tent of the *Green Knight*. The *Green Knight* perceiving from far his Approach, set Spurs to his Horse, and encountered the famous *Galeram* so fiercely, that he smote him off his Horse to the Earth. The *Green Knight* seeing him on the Ground, suddenly lighted from his Horse, and took off the Helm from his Head. *Galeram* fearing nothing but present Death, yielded, but all in vain, for without Pity, he first dispoiled him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a Tree, as he had done the rest before. *Orson* perceiving that *Galeram* was put to death, made Signs with his Hands, that he would fight with him presently, not letting him have any Respite;

but *Valentine* answered him again by Signs, that he should withdraw himself for a while ; for he would first go try his own Strength on him : Hereupon he put himself in Arms, and took his way towards the beauteous Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him ; being come before her, she grew wonderful sorrowful, and at last she spake unto him on this manner : Alas ! fair Knight, what madness is this in you, to adventure your self for the Love of such an unfortunate Lady as I ? Well, if thou wilt needs run into Danger, go on ; but I will invoke the Gods to aid and assist thee against thine and mine Enemy, and so farewell. Leave thus taken, *Valentine* mounted, to take his way toward the *Green-Knight*. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a worthy Knight, who was likewise enamoured with the Lady, and thus began to say to him, Sir, have a little Patience, I entreat you, and suffer me to go first. Friend, said *Valentine*, I freely grant your Desire, go and return with Victory. This Knight's Name was *Tyris*, born in *Savoy*, a Man of great Birth and Living, but riotously had run through his Means, leaving himself little, save only his Horse and Arms : Having thus obtained leave of *Valentine*, he also took leave of the Lords there assembled, and so went to the Tent of the *Green-Knight* ; the *Green-Knight* perceiving *Tyris* to Approach, leapt out of his Pavillion to welcome him. *Tyris* seeing him, said, Sir, presently Mount and Defend thy self, for I breath out Defiance against thee. The *Green-Knight* hearing him say so, called for his Horse, which was presently brought unto him ; and putting his Foot into the Stirrup, suddenly seated himself in the Saddle, and betook him to a Spear and Shield, preparing to take their Course at each other ; but at the first Encounter, the *Green-Knight* ran so furiously, that he smote *Tyris* quite through the Body, so that he fell down Dead ; which he perceiving, put a Cord about his Neck, and hang'd him up amongst the rest.

Valentine hearing of the Death of *Tyris*, was wonderful sorrowful, yet taking Courage, he recommended himself to the Gods : having thus done, he put Spurs to his Horse, and took his way speedily towards the Tent : When the *Green-Knight* espied him, he was more fearful of him, than of all the rest ; wherefore he called unto him, saying, Knight, give Ear unto this I now shall say, seest thou yonder Tree ? There shalt thou find hanging a Green Shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir, said *Valentine*, you have Servants enough of your own, send them, for by me it shall never be fetched. By my Law, quoth the *Green-Knight*, you shall either bring me the Shield, or else know this, you shall never Conquer me. When *Valentine*, had well considered these words he speak, as touching the
fetch-

fetching of the Shield, he valiantly rode towards the Tree, but he lost his Labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sorrowful, and returning unto the *Green-Knight*, in an angry Mood, said, Go fetch thy Shield thy self, for I cannot have it; wherefore accursed be that Magician that so fastened it; and an evil End betide him that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend, quoth he, shall I tell thee wherefore I sent thee? It was, for that this Shield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth such Vertue, that no Man, be he never so strong, can take it from the Place where it is fastned, save only he alone, by whom I shall be overcome; and for the Doubt I stood in of thee, therefore I sent thee thither, now my Doubt is satisfied; and therefore I advise thee to return to the Place from whence thou camest, and save thy self, for seeing thee so fair a Knight, I am forced to pity thee, and take no Pleasure in thy Death, from which thou canst not escape, if thou fightest with me. Further, to the end thou shouldest not think I uttered these words to abuse thy Patience, know this: That there is none living that can vanquish me, except first, he be the Son of a King, and next such a one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman; now if thou be such a one, thou may'st overcome me, if not, thou dost but shorten thy own Days by an untimely Death. At these words *Valentine* took little Pleasure, knowing that by this Relation he could not be that Man; but seeing that he was come to that Enterprize, he would not return till he had assayed his Strength against him, and therefore with a loud Voice he speak thus, Valiant and redoubt Knight, I well understand I'm not the Man by whom you shall be conquered, yet whosoever I am, I'll not depart hence till I have fought with you. By the Gods, quoth the *Green-Knight*, then thou hast some secret Treason to work against me, that thus thou runneth upon thy Death wilfully: But e'er I part with thee, I'll make thee know the Price of this thy Rashness. And therewithal leapt upon his Horse, bidding one of his Servants bring him a Box of precious Balm; the Vertue of it was such, that what Wound soever he received, tho' never so Mortal, it had Power instantly to heal up the Breach. After he had received it, he suddenly put Spurs to his Horse, and couching his Spear in his Rest, both ran their Course so furiously, that their Spears brake in many pieces; and they suddenly bending themselves to the next Course, most valiantly drew out their Swords; whereat *Valentine* behaved himself so nimbly, that he gave the *Green Knight* so full a Stroak, that he cut him thro' his Armour, insomuch that the Blood issued out in abundance. He feeling himself wounded, he with a Blow struck away a great piece of *Valentine's* Thigh, and having thus Wounded him, said, you may see I can wield a Sword as well as you: I told you that you would

fall under my Hand ; and anon I shall be fain to hang your dead Corpse on a Tree, as I have done the rest as came before you. Pagan, quoth *Valentine*, vaunt not thy self over much, for as yet I'm not conquered ; therefore defend thy self ; and there-with he gave him such a Blow, that he smote away a quarter of his Shield ; and the *Green-Knight*, at the same encounter, brake his Sword upon the Helm of *Valentine*, felling him from his Horse : *Valentine* being always valiant, suddenly recovered. The Pagan seeing him rise, drew a sharp pointed Knife, and threw it at him, but he seeing it come, started aside, so that it missed him. The *Green-Knight* being thus unarmed, turned about his Horse, thinking to have recovered them again ; but *Valentine* being on the Ground, and seeing fit Opportunity, cut off his Horse's Feet, so that they came both tumbling to the Earth : being on the Earth ; he suddenly arose, and then the were both together (by the Strength of their Arms) holding each other : But in short, the Bickering was so fierce, that they were both sore wounded : The Pagan quickly healed his with the Balm before spoken of.

This Fight continued so long, that the Day began to shut in, and both grew weary - The *Green-Knight* was vexed that he could not overcome him, and tho' he were even spent, yet he proudly bare it out, saying, Knight, give over, for I perceive thy Weariness, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little Honour for me to conquer thee : Go, return again to *Aquitain*, and rest there this Night, and report, That there never encountered me so valiant a Knight as thou art. But meet me to morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of thy Friends, for thou shalt never return. *Valentine* accepted his offer, and was glad thereof ; so mounting his Horse, he returned to the City. When Duke *Savary*, and his Lords saw him, they were joyful and received him in great Honour : Amongst the rest there assembled, was *Orson*, who ran and caught him in his Arms, and kissed him ; Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded what Tydings from the *Green-Knight* ? Sir, saith *Valentine*, he resteth in his Pavillion, and I think he is of that Strength and Courage, that there is not a Man living able to vanquish him. *Valentine*, quoth the Duke, you have escaped well, for never did any return, but all have perished ; wherefore you have proved your self a valiant Knight : Gracious Duke, said he, of my Conquest, I can make but small Boast, but to morrow there is appointed a new Tryal, and the Victory will light upon whom the Gods please to favour. Having ended the Conference with the Duke, *Valentine* was unarmed, and conducted to the Chamber of the Lady *Fezon*. The Lady was right joyful to see him return with Life : By this time Supper drew on, and the Duke taking his

his place at the Table, caused *Valentine* to be set on his left Hand ; for the Duke did honour him in the highest Degree ; Supper ended, *Valentine* withdrew himself to his private Chamber, and the *Green-Knight* rested in his Pavillion, where we will leave him, and speak of *Valentine*, who being in his Chamber, made many Complaints.

Chap. XIV. *How Valentine took Advice, and sent Orson on the Morrow, to fight with the Green-Knight ; and how Orson overcame him.*

V *Alentine* having appointed the Morrow to fight with the *Green-Knight*, began to be troubled as he lay in Bed, still thinking on what hapned the Day before. At last, when he had ruminated all his Imaginations, he began to resolve on this : I am not, neither can be that King's Son that should overcome the *Green-Knight* ; for I can neither remove the Shield he sent me for, neither was nourished without the Breast of Woman, Again, i'm very doubtful of the Combat, and therefore stand wavering, whereupon to rely. At last he began thus to think : What if *Orson* should be armed in my stead, and thereby try the worst of Fortunes wrack : Why ? it shall be so. The break of Day appearing he arose, and coming to *Orson*, he told him, by signs, that he should put on his Armour, take his Horse and make towards the *Green-Knight's* Pavillion, to Fight with him, *Orson* understanding his Intent, leaped and danced up and down joyfully ; making Signs that the Knight should never escape ; denying his Horse and Arms, desiring only a Club, such a one as he was accustomed to ; and shaking his Head, made Signs that he would have no other Armour. *Valentine* seeing this, gave him to understand, that he must put on the same Armour, and ride on the same Horse, for that the Knight should not know but that it was *Valentine* that came against him *Orson*. understanding the Subtilty intended, agreed to it ; and being thus armed, contrary to his Custom, he seemed personable, and made many Signs that he would overcome the *Green-Knight* e'er Noon, without Mercy or pitty ; and in these Signs he was so earnest, that he caused great Laughter. *Orson* thus prepared, took his leave of the Duke, embraced *Valentine*, and made him Signs to stand in fear of nothing ; for before he returned, he would bring the *Green-Knight* either alive or dead. But before he took Horse, he went and took leave of the Lady *Fezon* : and espying her, would have run and kissed her ; for by Signs he gave her to understand, that for the love of her he would Fight with the *Pagan Knight*. The Lady with a Smile made in Signs that she loved him well ; wishing him to bear himself valiantly ; and at his return she would greet him.

him love: Thus having taken his leave, betook him to his Horse, and being gone from the Palace, there was nothing so much talked of as the wild Man's combat with the *Green-Knight*, whereat was much Wonder: It was not long before *Orson* came to the Pavilion of the *Green Knight*, and smote the top thereof with his Spear, signifying Defiance. The *Green Knight* taking this rustick Salutation in great scorn, swore by *Mahomet*, that he would fether his Pride e'er the Evening; and therewithal mounted on his Steed, and couching his Spear, he entered the Field, *Orson* seeing him in a readiness, seemed to give back, as half afraid, and presently having gathered more Courage, they encountred with such Force, that both Horses and Men fell to the Earth: Being both down, they lightly recovered, drew their Swords, and laid one at the other fiercely. The *Green Knight* being fired with Anger, smote *Orson* such a Blow, that he cut the Circle of Gold on his Helm, and smote a Piece of his Shield quite off, and wounded him deeply, that with the outrage of the Stroak, his Sword fell



out of his Hand. *Orson* seeing the Blood run down, was far more fierce, rousing his Eyes, and shaking his Head; at last he took the Giant such a Pat on his Head; that he entered the Flesh, and bare a Part thereof afore him, and

and his Sword sliding from his Head, took him on the Arm so powerfully, that the Blood followed in abundance: The *Green Knight* having his Balm, feared no Wounds, which made *Orson* think it was in vain any longer to use his Sword, sith he could heal himself so quickly: Upon this *Orson* threw away all his Armour and Weapons, and suddenly run upon him, and caught him fast by the Arms, and cast him on the Ground, took off his Helm, and held him so down, that the *Green Knight* did yield to his Mercy; *Orson* not regarding his Submission, would have taken away his Life, if *Valentine* had not come to his Rescue, by riding Post to see the End of the Combat: Being come, he made Signs to *Orson*, that he should not kill him, which *Orson* obeyed: And at last *Valentine* began thus to speak to the *Green Knight*, saying, Proud Knight, you see that you are in the Hands of your Enemy, wherefore I think it fit that you suffer present Death, for look how you have done to the vanquished Knights, by hanging them on yonder Tree: so likewise you your self should be hanged on the highest Branch: Alas! quoth he, you seem to be a Man of Pitty, furnished with Courtesie, therefore my Request unto you is, to spare my Life: No, quoth *Valentine*, that I shall not, except upon Condition: First, That you renounce your Paganism: Secondly, Go with me into *France*, and tell King *Pepin*, that by *Valentine* and *Orson* you were overcome in single Combat: To all these Conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my Oath, to perform whatsoever you have already spoken.

Then *Valentine* made Signs unto *Orson*, that he should rise, which he readily obeyed; but so, that he left nothing about him to make any further Resistance. Being upon his Feet, he spake thus to *Valentine*, Sir, it was you that combated against me yesterday, therefore you, and none but you, did I expect this Day also; but I see I am conquered by the Man, that in the Duke's Palace threw me on the Ground. True, quoth *Valentine*, the very same. Why then, quoth the *Green Knight*, I shall reveal unto thee one Secret more, and I beseech thee grant unto me my Request; send this Knight that hath conquered me, unto yonder Tree, and if he bring away with him the Shield there fastned, then I'm well assured he is the Man that should conquer me. Hereupon *Valentine* made a Sign to *Orson*, to fetch away that Shield, who did as he appointed him; and coming near the Tree, he stretched forth his Arm to take it down, and suddenly it leaped into his Hand, and so he brought it with him to the *Green Knight*. When he saw *Orson* have the Shield, his Heart smote against his Sides, and throwing himself at his Feet, would have kissed them; but *Orson* receiving Signs from *Valentine* to the contrary, would not suffer him, but took him by the Arms,

and lifted him up : Being upon his Feet, he spake thus, Alas ! I of all others, owe unto you all my Service, and all Reverence, for now I'm assured you are both a hardy and a valiant Knight, and amongst all other I confess, that by conquering me, you have won unto your self everlasting Fame. Moreover, this assure your self, that he that conquers me, can be no less than a Son unto a King and Queen, and must be such a one as never sucked the Breast of any Woman : And that this shall appear to be Truth, I shall further prove it by my Sister *Clerimond*, for she hath a Head of Brasse, that telleth her the Adventures and Fortunes that to her and all her Generations shall befall ; likewise, this Head shall continue speaking until such time as the most worthiest Knight of the World enter into the Chamber where it now standeth ; and he being once entred, the said Head shall lose his Vertue, and is the only Man to have my Sister *Clerimond* to Wife ; wherefore, fair Knight, these things fallen out as you see, I greatly desire you would wed my Sister, as the most hardiest and most renownedst Knight in the whole World.

Chap. XV. *How Orson having conquered the Green Knight, Valentine caused him to be Christned, and sending him to King Pepin, had knowledge of his Father and Mother by means of the Green Knight. How the same Night that Orson was made sure to the Lady Fezon, an Angel appeared unto Valentine, and of the Charge she gave unto him.*

THE *Green Knight* having made this Motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto *Valentine* a Ring of Gold, upon Condition that he would carry that Ring unto her ; which Ring *Valentine* accepted ; and the *Green Knight* yielded himself a Prisoner, and is now going towards *France*, to accomplish that Oath that he before had given him. *Valentine* having received this Ring, never rested till he had seen the Lady so commended to him. After this, the *Green Knight*, by consent, was crowned King of the *Green Mountain*, and there held great State : Presently upon his League of Friendship concluded, he gave command throughout all his Host, that every Man should depart away from the Confines of *Aquitain*, and return into their Countries without doing any further Damage to Duke *Savary's* Country. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, *Valentine* and *Orson* took and led him as a Prisoner into the City of *Aquitain*, whereat was no little Joy ; and the Duke, with all his Lords, received him with great Triumph into the City. The *Green Knight* being thus brought as a Prisoner to the Duke, began to say on this manner : My Lords, you owe much Honour

nour unto the Knight that hath conquered me. And further, I give you to understand for certain, that he can be no less than Son to a King; and also, that he never sucked Woman's Breast, for if he had, he could not have been my Conqueror, for so it was ever said by the Brazen Head that standeth in the Chamber of my Sister *Clerimond*. Quoth the Duke, Well may this carry some likelihood of Truth, for he hath born himself very valiant against you; wherefore I think it my part to honour him with my utmost Endeavours. By this time is the worthy Train entred the Duke's Palace, whether the Duke commanded his Daughter's Presence; and then he said unto her, Daughter, behold here the *Green Knight*, that hath for your Love made Spoil of my Country, and I was no way able to repel him back, but only by this valiant Knight that *Valentine* hath brought from the Court of King *Pepin*, who hath freed us of our Fears: Wherefore this is my Desire, That as he hath conquered yours and my Enemy, so he may also conquer your Love, whereunto I willingly agree. The Duke having thus said, the Lady answered for her self in this manner: My Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no Reason I should resist, but do submit to your Disposall; for if I should do otherwise, it were great Disobedience. And again, my Lord, your Promise is already past, That whosoever could vanquish the Pagan Knight, should for his Labour receive me for his Wife. Now, my Lord, the Day of my Deliverance is come, so then, according to your Promise, you must give him to me, and I receive him as my lawful Spouse; otherwise I shall make void the Edict before gone throughout the World, and you thought false in your Promises. Daughter, quoth the Duke, you have spoken right graciously, and your Answer pleaseth me highly, and not only me, but all that are about us; wherefore it were not amiss to know of the Conqueror, whether he will have you: If he agree unto this Match, I shall give him in Dowry half my Country. Hereupon *Valentine* demanded of *Orson*, whether he would have the Lady *Fezon* to Wife? Who made Signs, that he would never have any other. Then caused the Duke to be brought before him a Priest, who then contracted them, and so their Time was passed with many Disports. These things thus ended, *Orson* made Signs unto the Lady, that he would never lye with her till he had gotten the Use of his Tongue, and that his Companion, *Valentine*, had conquer'd the Love of the Lady *Clerimond*. Of which you shall hear more hereafter.

The Day being past with great Banquetings and Solemnity, wherein *Fezon* was assured unto *Orson*, the Night approached, and every Man betook him to his Rest: Amongst the rest, *Valentine* and *Orson* were lodged most

richly ; and in the dead time of the Night *Valentine* had the Apparition of an Angel appeared unto him, saying, *Valentine, know this, that in the*



Morning thou speedily depart the Land, and take along with thee Orson, by whom the Green Knight hath been vanquished, and without further Delay, get thee into the Castle of Ferragus, there you shall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou shalt understand of whence thou art descended. This strange Vision drove him into a Thousand Fears, and in great Melancholly passed he away the Night: The Day being broken, he caused Orson to arise, and being ready, they hasted unto the Duke's Palace, where he found his Barons attending for him, and amongst the rest, the Green Knight: Not long after entred the Duke; being entred, the Green Knight took occasion to give him the Time of the Day, and began to speak unto him on this manner: Most renowned Duke, I freely confess my self vanquished, and withal, renounce all Right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlasting Peace with you, upon Condition, that you cause me to be Baptized. Knight, said the Duke, well have you said, I grant your Request. When the Priest was come that should Baptize him, Valentine began thus to say: Lords and Gentlemen,

men, May it please the Valiant Duke to grant me one Boon, which is this, That the Name of this Knight be call'd *Pepin*; it is the Name of the most mighty King of *France*, that nourished and fostred me even from my Cradle. The Duke consented unto *Valentine's* Demand, so he was called *Pepin*; After the Baptism, the Duke made Motion to *Valentine* and *Orson* for to Wed his Daughter, the Beautious Lady *Fezon*; but *Valentine* not allowing thereof, made this Excuse, that both he and *Orson* had vowed to go to *Jerusalem* e'er they did attempt any other Action, after the Conquest of the *Green Knight*. The Duke hearing this Excuse, gave them Leave upon this Condition, That *Orson* should take an Oath to return again into *Aquitain*, at his coming back from thence, to this they both agreed. The same Hour also the *Green Knight* took leave of the Duke of *Aquitain*, and went his Way into *France*, to keep his promised Faith to King *Pepin*: Before his departure, *Valentine* asked him for the Ring that he had promised; who gave it unto him, saying, Whatsoever he be that beareth this about him, shall never stand in fear of Drowning, nor be afraid of false Accusation, Then *Valentine* took the Ring and put it on his Finger; so *Orson* and he took leave, and departed the Way towards the Lady *Clerimond*, to find out the Castle of *Ferragus*; and the *Green Knight* likewise took leave for *France*. Much about this time *Blandiman*, 'Squire to the distressed Lady *Bellissant*, was arrived at King *Pepin's* Court, clad in the Habit of a Pilgrim, and having saluted the King, he wondred at this his unlook'd for Shape, and at last asked him, From what Sepulchre he was come? Worthy King, said *Blandiman*, I am no Pilgrim, altho' I have taken that Shape upon me, but only to come more safely unto you have I taken this Habit: Wherefore know, that I am a Messenger sent from the High and Mighty Lady your Sister, that by Treason and false Accusations hath been Banished her Country by the Emperor *Alexander*, and at this time liveth in great sorrow of Heart, only for that you have unjustly bent your Heart against her, and sought no way to relieve her Misery.

Chap. XVI. How King *Pepin* came to know that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews; and how the *Green Knight* submitted himself according to his Promise.

Blandiman having delivered his Message, the King began to demand where his Sister was; *Blandiman* replied, I know right well where she is, but I have given her my word never to discover it to any: But worthy King, if you doubt her Loyalty, I shall bring you a Man that will Fight the

the Quarrel, to prove her honest. Nay, said the King, I have seen enough thereof already, by the Downfal of the Arch-priest, also I have made much Means to hear of her, but cannot : And that which most grieveth me, is, that she was great with Child when she was Banish'd ; neither am I assured, whether she was delivered of that Burden. My Lord, quoth *Blandiman*, know this for a Truth, That my Lady laid her Great-belly in the Forrest of *Orleance* ; and while she dispatched me to get her the Help of a Woman : But e'er I could return, she was deliver'd of two Sons, the one of which was carryed by a Bear into the Wood, she never wist whither ; but she follow'd so long, till at last I found her in a Swoond upon the Ground : I coming to her, took her up, and comforted her so well as I could, till being somewhat recovered, in woeful Sighs she unfolded the Manner of the Loss of her Child ; and for the other, she had left it under a Tree. I hearing her say so, hasted to the Tree whereas I left her ? but being come thither, I could not find the other Child. And thus worthy King, have I relate the whole Story of your Sister, and her two Infants. And other Tydings have I none, but this, I'm that *Blandiman* that you gave to attend her, when she Married the Emperor. the King giving Ear unto this, said, Alas ! *Blandiman*, thy words strikes me into a Thousand Fears, what should be become of my Sister ? But seeing thou canst tell no more, tell me yet how long ago this is that thou hast told me. My Lord, quoth he, it was even that Day you met me in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and I related to you the Tydings of your Sister's Banishment. This struck the King into such Admiration, that he began to recollect his Wits, and then presently came into his Mind the finding of *Valentine*, and how by him *Orson* was conquered in the same Wood. Then he began to think on the Story that *Blandiman* had told him, and thereby knew that these were the two Babes brought forth by his Sister ; wherefore he sent for the Queen, and other Ladies, to let them understand what *Blandiman* had declared, saying, My Lords, I have long time nourished and brought up in my Court a poor Child, and now it doth plainly appear he is Son to an Emperor, and my near Kinsman : *Valentine*, whom I found in the Forrest, brought forth there by my Sister *Bellisant*, in the time of her Exile, and *Orson*, who was likewise Vanquished by *Valentine*, to be his Brother, and both Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*.

At these Tydings all the Court was joyful, save only *Hausfray* and *Henry*, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their Hearts sorrowful, for above all other they desired the Death of *Valentine*, that next him they might work their Wills on their young Brother *Charlemain*, against whom they chiefly

chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will appear. But to return to *Blandiman*, who hearing the King speak so much of the Children, demanded of the King, if he knew in what Country they were. Why, said the King, one of these I have brought up in my Court, in such Fashion, that he is become a valiant Knight, and by his Valour hath conquer'd his Brother, being a wild Man, living in the Wood like a Beast, and one that did much Damage to the Country there about: Having conquered him, brought him to Court, where having lived some small time, they both departed, and took their Way towards *Aquitain*, to fight with a worthy Champion, called the *Green Knight*, and since their Departure, I never heard what became of them. Sir, said *Blandiman*, according to the Tale you have told, I remember well, that near *Aquitain* I met two such, but I am troubled that I knew them not. So the King musing at these Accidents, caused *Blandiman* to be highly feasted, and held as a Companion amongst his other Lords.

Now it hapned, that on the same Day the *Green Knight* arrived at *Paris*; as soon as he came into the Presence of the King, he saluted him with great Reverance. The King seeing him in Armour, marvelled thereat, and demanded the Cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came? The *Green Knight* replied again on this manner: Honourable King, know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother; and true it is, that I am that Knight, that for the Love of the Lady *Fezon*, Daughter to the Duke of *Aquitain*, have for one whole Year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my Subjection; and having him under me, I took a Truce with him for Six Months, upon these Conditions: That if within that time he found not forth a Knight that by force of Arms should Conquer me, I was to have his fair Daughter *Fezon* to Wife. On the other side, if I were conquered, I should remove away my Siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing him any further Damage. So it is, that long I was fought withal, by divers valiant Knights of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endureth Death, and there still hangeth upon a Tree: At last it so fell out, that there assailed me Two worthy Knights, the one named *Valentine*, and the other *Orson*: *Valentine* fought with me one whole Day, wherein he bore himself so bravely, that Night coming on, we were forced to give over, all wounded, tyred, and weary: The next Morning when the Battle should be again renewed, his Fellow, *Orson*, armed in *Valentine's* Armour, entered the Field in most fierce and disdainful manner, offering me Defiance; I scorning any Competitor, addrest out my self against him; but little my

my Strength, for in the End he overcome me, and would have taken away my Life, had not *Valentine* come in upon us, and rescued me, upon these Conditions, First, That I should forsake *Mahomet*. Secondly, That I should come unto you, and yield my self at your Command, and to stand to your Censure, either in Life or Death. Again, when I received Baptism, he caused me to be called *Pepin*, and so is my Name. The King having heard all this long Story from the *Green Knight*, made this Answer, in the Presence of all his Barons: Welcome to us, and of your Company we are right glad; live with us in our Court, and be jocond, for I freely grant you your Life, and promise you further, That if you will tarry with us in our Country, I will endow thee with many fair Lands and Possessions. The King shewing himself thus gracious, demanded of him where these Knights was, that had conquered him. Marry, quoth the *Green Knight*, I left them both at *Aquitain*, with the valiant Duke *Savary*, who holdeth them in great Respect as any that are remaining in his Court. Thus you may now perceive, that by the words of *Blandiman* and the *Green Knight*, King *Pepin* had perfect Intelligence of his beautiful Sister, and his two valiant Nephews. After all these Tydings hapned, King *Pepin* made a solemn Vow, That he would go himself in Person into *Greece*, to tell the Emperor of these glad some Tydings, and to take Order to send abroad into all Lands to find her out.

Chap. XVII. *How King Pepin departed from France towards Greece, to bear these Tydings: How he found Constantinople besieged by the Souldan of Egypt, How the Green Knight Justed with two Sarazens and overcame them: Of the Battle that was fought, and the Armies entering the City.*

King *Pepin* put himself into a Readiness to depart into *Greece*, went forth, and before much Time was spent, arrived at *Rome*, where the Pope received him joyfully; but as he was sat at Dinner, News was brought him, That the Souldan of *Egypt*, with a mighty Army, had besieged *Constantinople*; whereupon resolving to go to the Relief of it, he craved Aid of the Pope, who readily granted it, and Forces were immediately raised in all the Territories of the Church, who chearfully assembled themselves under so couragious a General; and so King *Pepin* coming to *Constantinople*, he found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great fear of the Souldan's Army, betaking themselves to the City, keeping the same against all the Force of the Pagans. The Emperor was close confin'd
in

in the City, by reason of the long continued Siege; but when he heard Relief was come, he took Courage, and the Pagans were much alarmed; but the Souldan with big words encouraged them, not only to subdue *Constantinople*, but *Rome* it self, lessening and deriding the Valour of the Christian Army. But King *Pepin* resolving to fight his Way into the City, sent



Letters to the Emperor to make a vigorous Sally at such time as he should give the On-set, and so march towards the Enemy. The Souldan upon this, put his Men in Order, to discover the Number of his Enemies. The *Green Knight*, who was advanced before the Christian Army, with the like Intent on the other side, perceiving them coming by the side of the Hill, and knowing them to be Enemies, addressed himself to the Encounter, and break his Launce against the foremost; Then a dreadful Combat began between them, and in fine, killed one and put the other to flight. The King upon this good Omen, charged the Souldan's Battle with great Fury, wherein *Myllon Dauglar* slew the King of *Quile*, and Three others, e'er he gave over the Field: This made the Souldan and his choice Men come

M

up,

up, and furiously set upon *Dauglar*, who valiantly defended himself, till his Horse wounded, fell under him; and there had been slain, but that the *Green Knight* rescued and remounted him: Then great was the Slaughter on both sides; for the Emperor issuing out with his Army, the Infidels were in a manner hemmed in; and King *Pepin* pressing on, cryed, Courage, noble Brother, and you shall have News of your Lady *Bellifant*: This made him encourage his Men to the utmost, crying for *Constantinople*; which so heartened them, especially with his own and King *Pepin's* Example, that they fought like Lyons. The *Green Knight*, and other Champions, made a terrible Slaughter, so that the Sarazans began to fall in Rout, and flye; but the King of *Sclavonia* coming with 50000 fresh Men, restored the Battle, which continued bloody and doubtful; but King *Pepin* and the Emperor finding they were over-numbered, and the Enemy had fresh Succours, thought fit to retire into the City, which they did, and there being close begirt with a Siege, endured extream Famine, where we must leave them to follow *Valentine* and *Orson*, who for the Love of *Clerimond*, have adventured as you have already heard.

Chan. VIII. *How Valentine and Orson arrived at the strong Castle wherein*
our Clerimond was; and how, by the Brazen Head, they had Knowledge of
their Parents.

AFTER many Days Travel, at last *Valentine* and *Orson* lighted upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle, strong and impregnable; the Covering whereof was of shining Metal, glittering in the Sun, that it drove *Valentine* into Suspicion, that this was it whereunto the *Green Knight* had directed him to have a Sight of the fair Lady *Clerimond*. At all Adventures he maketh Way towards the Castle, and at last entred into this Island by one of the Ports thereof: Being entred, he demanded who was the Owner of that Castle, which appeared so sumptuous to the Eye? Answer was returned, That the Castle was in the Keeping of the fair Lady *Clerimond*, Sister unto the Gyant *Ferragus*, and builded by a mighty Man in Substance, a Sarazen, the which Sarazen, amongst all other his excellent Works done in this Castle, he caused one Chamber to be richly adorn'd, of which Chamber more shall be spoken off in its place.

Moreover, it was told unto *Valentine*, amongst other things, that in the Chamber stood an excellent Pillar made by Art, upon the which stood a Head of Brass, composed a long time before by the Negromancy of a Fairy, the which Head was of such an excellent Composition, that it gave

Answer

Answer to any thing that was demanded : *Valentine* hearing this strange Relation of the Castle was right glad ; for now he was verily perswaded, that this must needs be the very Castle he had so long time sought, and wherein the *Green Knight* told him he should find his Sister, so highly praised of all Nations for her excellent Beauty. Having gathered Knowledge enough, he left questioning any further, and went on his Way, accompanied with *Orson*, to see if he could get Entrance into this Castle. By this time they were come to the Gates thereof, where thinking to enter, they were resisted by Ten sturdy Knights, that kept the Gates Night and Day.

When they saw *Valentine* and *Orson* make proffer to enter, they said unto them : Lords, or whatever you be, with-draw your selves back, for into this Castle entereth none, of what Birth soever, without the Leave and License of a Maiden, to whom we, as Guard, do appertain. Why, quoth *Valentine*, go tell her, and ask whether it be her Pleasure we enter or not?



Hereupon one of them entered the Chamber where fair *Clerimond* was, and kneeling before her, said, Lady, at your Gate standeth Two Gallants that would enter your Castle ; they seem fierce and couragious, full of high Spirit,

Spirit, and Men far disagreeing from the Laws and Religion of our Country : Now fair Lady, say, Shall they have Entrance? Descend, quoth the Lady, while I go forth into a Window to take a View of them, and let the Gates be surely kept, for I mean to question with them my self. The Porter did as she commanded. Then *Clerimond*, that was well languaged, leaned out of the Window, upon a Cushion covered with Gold, and said unto *Valentine* : What are you, that dare offer to enter my Castle without leave? Lady, quoth *Valentine*, with an undaunted Courage, I am a Knight that travelleth this Way, and would gladly speak with that Head of Brass that remaineth within this Castle, if it be your Pleasure, because, as I understand, it resolveth Doubts. Knight, quoth the Lady, upon these Terms you may not enter ; but if you can bring me any certain Signs from one of my Brethren, either from King *Ferragus*, or the *Green Knight*, Lord of *Tartary*, then you may freely enter this Castle, and by no other Means : Yet you may enter, that is by the Seneshal of this Place, with whom you may run Six Courfes with your Spear to try your Valour ; wherefore now be advised, either fetch me some certain Tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your Fortune in single Combat, as I have told you. Lady, quoth *Valentine*, against your Seneshal I dare adventure, for I had rather win my Entrance by ponderous Blows, than by Entreats and fawning Speeches. This Choice chose *Valentine*, rather than to bewray the Ring which he had brought along with him, given him by the *Green Knight*, to present to his Sister *Clerimond*. The Lady seeing his resolute Hardiness, suddenly fell in Love with him, and presently went into the Chamber where the Head of Brass stood, and said unto it : What is that Knight of Courage, that would so gladly enter this Castle? Lady, quoth the Head, of that Knight you shall know nothing, until such time as you have brought him before me. *Clerimond* at this Answer seemed very sorrowful, for she was greatly in Love with *Valentine*.

Chap. XIX. *How when as Valentine was before the Castle, talking with the Guard, Clerimond bewailed the Love of Valentine : And how he Juffed for the Entrance, and overcame the Seneshal.*

C*lerimond* pondering in her Mind the Words of *Valentine*, being overcome with Affection, said on this manner : Ah ! *Valentine* is Valorous and Beautiful ; and if I have Power over the Head of Brass, I shall never take other Husband than this Knight. Hereupon she sent for the Seneshal, and told him, That this Knight would enter the Castle. The Seneshal
hereat

hereat enraged, began thus : Lady, if he be so hardy to attempt it, I shall quickly make him know, that he cometh too late to gain your Love.

Seneshal (said the Lady) since it must be so, go arm you presently, and so he departed to put himself in Arms ; being armed, he mounted his Horse, couched his Spear in his Rest, and withal issued out of the Gate in Readiness. The Lady got into a Window to behold the Combat. When *Valentine* saw the Seneshal to come toward him, he couched his Spear, and put Spurs to his Horse, they met so fiercely, that their Spears break in pieces : presently having a new Supply, suddenly they met so fiercely, that they fell to the Ground Horse and Man ; but *Valentine's* Horse got up with his Master ; *Valentine* being thus saved by his Horse, said unto the Seneshal, Rise up, and newly mount your self, for there is no Honour in conquering an Enemy at Advantage. Whereupon the Seneshal was freshly



mounted, and new Spears given they again : Then took a Fresh career, and therewithal *Valentine* so encountred him about the Head, that he bore away his Helm, and threw both Horse and Man down upon the Earth : The Seneshal finding himself in Danger, said thus unto *Valentine*, Knight, I know not from whence you are, nor of what Parentage, but never in my

my Life found I a Man of thy valour, wherefore I yield, and withal give thee leave to enter this Castle at thy pleasure (only upon this Condition, that you speak not unto the Lady *Clerimond* without my leave. Quoth *Valentine*, thou hast requested that which I cannot grant, and know, it was for her Love I came hither, and though I never saw her before, yet are my Thoughts on fire. Therefore from hence I will never part till I have spoken with her, and also with the Brazen-head: The Lady all this while standing at the Window, wondred what Conference passed between these two Champions, and at last thus said unto one of her Maidens: see how indiscreet this Seneschal is, to fight with such a valiant Knight, who long since might have taken away his Life. When *Valentine* saw the great Pride of the Seneschal, and that he stood it out with him, being his Prisoner, he presently run against him another Course, and therewithal gave him so deadly a Stroke, that he ran him quite thro' the Body, so that he fell off his Horse stark dead, at which the Lady *Clerimond* was exceeding joyful, commanding them to set open the Gates, and that *Valentine* should be brought up unto her in the Great Hall: When that the Lady beheld *Valentine* well, she came towards him, and said unto him on this manner: Knight, you are most welcome, for I never saw a more valiant and courageous Man all the Days of my Life: Enter my Castle, for it appeareth by your Valour and Chivalry, that you are descended from the Loyns of some Royal Stock: Lady, know this for a Certainty, my Name is *Valentine*, a poor Adventurer, for neither my self, nor my Companion, ever knew from what stock we descended: He was nourished by a Beast in the Forrest, and lived there like a wild Man, till as I conquered him by my Sword, besides, he never spake in his Life more than you see at this Instant: Wherefore Lady, thus far have I travelled to get Knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the Love of you, being so fair a Lady.

Chap. XX. *How Valentine shewed Clerimond her Brother's Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen-head, which told him from whence he was descended.*

Valentine having purchased free Entrance, by overcoming the Seneschal, at last he shewed the Ring that the *Green Knight* had given him, and smiling, delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the Token, saying, Fair Knight, had you shewed this Ring when you first craved access into this Castle; you had never endured the Danger that you have now escaped? But sith it hath pleased you to try your Valour, I cannot better commend you

you, than to admire your brave couragious Heart. Whilst *Valentine* was also plac'd just against her, in whom she took her great Felicity, as he in her : Dinner being ended, *Clerimond* arose from the Table, and taking *Valentine* by the Hand, said thus unto him : Sir, well have you purchased your welcome, deserving to enter into my priviest Chamber, and so you shall, even that Chamber wherein that Brazen-head standeth the which Head shall declare all that you can desire, and make no doubt but it will tell you most joyful Tydings : Wherefore, both you and your Companion come along with me, for I gladly long to hear, as you desire to be heard. Hereat *Valentine* grew exceeding joyful : First, for that he shall now understand that which he now desired to know : Secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their Way out of the Hall, she brought him into that Chamber : Being come unto the Door thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the Chamber Door Guarded on this manner : On the one side a grim, fearful and ugly shapen Villain, strong and crooked, armed with a Club of Iron upon his Neck, which offered to make Resistance : on the other side of the Chamber Door stood a most fierce Lyon, these two continually kept the Door, that none could enter in without the Lady's leave, or else fight with the Villain and Lyon : *Valentine* perceiving these two Watchmen to make Resistance, demanded of the fair Lady *Clerimond* the meaning thereof, who answered, These two you see here are to keep the Door, that none may enter without fighting with them, and that divers have perished in their Presumption : And again, the Lyon is of such Fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, unless the Son of a King, and to such she shews her self very loving.

Lady (quoth *Valentine*) happen what will, yet I mean to try my Fortune with the Lyon, and by main Strength caught him about the Body, whereat the Lyon forsook him, and let him pass. *Orson* likewise assailed the Villain, and e'er he could get ready to lift up his Club of Iron, he took him by the Middle so strongly, that he threw him against the Wall ; he took away his Club, and gave him such a Blow, that he tumbled on the Ground, and had it not been for the Lady *Clerimond*, he had slain him in that place. Being both thus vanquished, the Gates was opened, and they entred the Chamber, wherein they might see all the World could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Saphires, with a great Multitude of precious Stones : Within this Chamber was four Pillars of Jasper, marvellous rich of which two of them are Yellow as most fine Gold, and a Third Green, more green than Grass, a Fourth more Red than a Flame of Fire ; between these Pillars was a Precious Stone, called an Amery, more Rich than the Heart of Man.

can devise, in the midst of which stood a Head of Brasse, set upon a rich Pillar, *Valentine* wondring at the Riches of these Objects, fixed his Eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it would publicly open concerning his Birth, At length when every Voice was silent, the Head began to speak after this manner. 'Thou Famous Knight of Royal Parentage, art called *Valentine* the Valiant, of whom it may justly be said, there was never the like appeared before me; thou art the Man, who of Right ought to Marry with the Lady *Clerimond*, thou art Son to the Emperor of Greece, and thy Mother's Name is *Bellissant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of France, who by wrong Suggestions is banished her Country and Husband's Bed; know this, thy Mother is in *Portugal* in the Castle of *Fer-ragus*, who hath had the Keeping of her these Twenty Years: *Pepin* is thy Uncle, and the wild Man who hath ever accompanied thee, is thy natural Brother; you Two were delivered by the Empress *Bellissant*, in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and being Brought forth, thy Companion was taken away by a ravenous Bear, and by her he was nourished in that Wood, amongst the rest of her Whelps, and never sucked he any other: For thy part *Valentine*, thou wast found the very same Day in that Forrest by King *Pepin*, who hath nourished thee tenderly, and brought thee up to Man's Estate: Further, thus much I shall also tell thee, that this thy Brother here present, shall never have the use of his Tongue, till a Thread be cut under the same, and then thou shalt hear him speak plainly. Therefore proceed as thou hast begun, and thou shalt prosper, for my Time is at a Period, sith thou art come to enter into this Chamber.

Valentine marking well all the Head uttered, fell upon the Bosom of his Brother *Orson*, and *Orson* on his, and with kind Embraces they counter-changed each other. The Lady seeing all this, began thus to break out into Speeches: Alas! courteous Knight, I of all other ought most to joy at this your happy arrival, for by you I am freed of Ten Years Hearts Grief, which I have hardly undergone hitherto. Again, by this Brazon-head I understand that you have ever been the Man on whom my Affections should rest, and whereunto I gently agree (if you please) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady, quoth *Valentine*, I accept you as my Wife, who was given to me by your Brother the *Green Knight*, that was vanquished by my Brother *Orson* before the City of *Aquitain*: only this I shall Request; That as your Brother the *Green Knight* hath forsaken *Mahomet*, so you would do the like. Sir, quoth she, I shall gladly pleasure you in any thing you shall command me, and be obedient to your Will in every Point, whilst you and

and I shall live. And so great Joy betided all the Inhabitants of this Castle ; for they were right glad of the Tydings that the Brazen Head had declared unto him. After this, the Reputation of *Valentine* encreased more and more : But all his former Joy and Gladness was suddenly eclipsed by the Treachery of her Brother *Ferragus*, as hereafter shall be more fully declared.

Chap. XXI. *How the Gyant Ferragus had Knowledge of all that pass'd between his Sister and Valentine, by the Means of one Pacolet, a Dwarf, and an Enchanter.*

NOW shall you understand, that within this Castle where *Clerimond* was, dwelt a Dwarf, named *Pacolet*, which the Lady had nourished and brought up of a Child, bestowing much Cost to have him taught in Schools. This *Pacolet* being of more Age than Stature, grew exceeding Witty, and at last studied the Black Art, and therein grew so famous in Negromancy, that by Enchantment, he had composed a little Horse made of Wood, in the Head of which Horse he had so artificially conveyed a Pin of Wood, that every time he mounted on his Back to ride abroad, he would turn the Pin towards the Place he would go unto, and suddenly he would be in the same Place without Danger ; for the Horse could run through the Air swifter than any Bird. This *Pacolet* being in the Castle, observed the Behaviour of *Valentine*, and when he had fit Time, he addressed himself to *Portugal*, to bear News to *Ferragus*, how all Matters had passed at the Castle. So he betook himself to his wooden Horse, and in a Moment of Time (setting the Pin for that Part) he arrived there, according to his desired Wish, and related the Story unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* heard this Tale, he grew exceeding angry against *Valentine*, for that he should have his Sister in Marriage : Also he grew enraged at her, that she should grant her Love unto him, being a Christian Knight, swearing by his Gods to take Revenge upon them both : But all this he dissembled unto *Pacolet*, bidding him return and bear this Message to *Clerimond*, that the Knight *Valentine*, who shall have her to Wife, is right Welcome, and that e'er long I will come in Person to visit them, accompanied with a gallant Troop of Nobles, and then shall their Nuptials be royally Solemnized : So *Pacolet* took leave, and got him on his Horse, and was in an Instant at home again. Being come, he presently went into the Presence of the Lady *Clerimond*, and said unto her : Madam, I have been in *Portugal* with your Brother *Ferragus*, who is glad of your Choice with *Valentine*, and promiseth e'er long to be

N

here

here in Person, and to make a royal Marriage. At this Tale the Lady stood amazed, and at last began to answer him thus : Ah *Pacolet* ! is this true that thou hast told ? Ah me ! the Gods defend my Brother from plotting any Treason against me, for I am well assured he could never abide a Knight of *France*, nor any other that is a Christian ; I am right angry that thou didst not acquaint me with thy Departure, for I had a serious Business for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a Christian Woman, one that of a long Time hath had her abiding with my Brother *Farragus*, in the Castle that he now holdeth.

Chap. XXII. *How Pacolet hereupon made another expeditious Journey into Portugal, to see the Lady Bellifant, Valentine's Mother ; his returning back, and the News that he brought.*



THE Lady having ended her Tale, *Pacolet* made her this Answer : Lady, seeing you are so earnest, I shall, for your sake, make another Journey into *Portugal*, and before to morrow Mid-day I shall bring you Tydings whether she be there or no. *Valentine* hearing him say so, replied : That thou canst not do, except the Devil be in thee : The Lady *Clerimond* said unto

unto *Valentine* : Let him alone, for by Art he hath provided, that he will ride more than a Thousand Miles a Day. Hereat *Valentine* marvelled much, and calling *Orson* unto him, he cut the Thread from under his Tongue, that hindred his Speech, which being done, he spake presently, where he related the Story of his Life led in the Forrest, which held them the most Part of that Evening. On the Morrow, according as *Pacolet* had promised, he was found in the Hall before *Valentine*, saying unto him on this manner : Sir, I am returned from *Portugal*, and have seen your Mother in good Health : Friend, quoth *Valentine*, thou art right welcome, for it is she only I desire to hear off. Love, quoth *Clerimond*, be not too hasty, for if my Brother come not hither, we will go into *Portugal* to him, and then we shall have both our Hearts desire. Nay, surely, quoth *Pacolet*, your Brother will come hither : Ay, quoth the Lady, but I stand in fear of him, lest that he work some Treason against us ; for this last Night I dreamed a fearful Dream, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was : I dreamed I was in a great Water, in the which I should have perished, had it not been for a great Face that drew me out thereof ; being out, methoughts I saw a Griffin issue out of a Cloud, who with his Talants took me up, and carried me I know not whether. Love, quoth *Valentine*, give no Respect at all to Dreams, for they are but Delusions of a melancholly Mind. 'Tis true, quoth she, but they trouble me every Night. Having ended this Discourse, they entred into a fair Arbour, garnished with great variety of Flowers, reposing themselves some few Hours in long Dalliance, where we will leave them ; and you shall hear that the same Day arrived *Ferragus*, the Traytor, at the Castle of *Clerimond*.

The Lady hearing of his coming, presently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and said unto her : Sister, above all Creatures living, I have most desired to see you ; tell me, I pray you, which is the Knight you mean to make your Husband ? This, fair Brother, is the Man. Whereupon *Valentine* saluted him with great Reverence. *Ferragus* said unto him : Fair Knight, ye be welcome into these Quarters, for the Love of my Sister *Clerimond* ; for seeing it is so fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the *Green Knight*, and sent him into *France*, causing him to be Christned, even so have I great Desire to be Baptized, to become a Christian, and follow your Religion.

Valentine believing all these words which he had spoken ; but under these fair Promises he smothered Treason ; yet at last *Valentine* began thus to say unto him : Sir, it is reported to me, that within your Castle, for the Space of these Twenty Years, you have maintain'd a Christian Woman, who

is Mother unto me, whom I would gladly see, her Name is *Bellisant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*, and Wife unto the Emperor of *Greece*. By *Mahomet*, said *Ferragus*, you say Truth, and to the End your Eyes may behold her, you shall go along with me into *Portugal*, so shall you rightly be informed, whither she be the Lady you seek after or no; Gramercy, quoth *Valentine*, and so *Ferragus* left him, and said unto his Sister *Clerimond* after this manner: Sister, my Soul's Joy, I desire your Advancement more then any thing on Earth, and am glad you have found out so worthy and valiant a Knight for your Espousal; wherefore to knit up all at once, my Desire is, that you would go with me into *Portugal*, and there, with the Consent and Applause of all my Nobles, we intend highly to Solemnize your Nuptial-Day.

Chap. XXIII. *How Valentine and Orson were betrayed by the Treachery of Ferragus; and how he committed them to Prison, with their woeful Lamentation.*

F*Ferragus* having thus gotten their good Wills to depart for *Portugal*, put all his Ships in a Readiness, and packing up all their Provision, they put forth for Sea. Being now at Sea, *Ferragus* fell from all his former Words of Comfort, and began to plot the Death of *Valentine* and *Orson*. In the dead time of the Night, when the Two Brethren were at Rest in their Cabins, he caused them secretly to be taken forth of their Beds, and committed them to Hands, muzzling their Eyes also, that they could not see: Now when *Clerimond* saw what was done to her Love she fell into an extream Agony, and with watery Eyes began thus to vent her Lamentation: Alas, dear *Valentine*, our Joys are suddenly turned unto Sorrow, thou hast bought my Love at too dear a Rate, when thou art not only thus misused, but even in danger of thy Life: Cursed be the Day of my Birth, for with much Danger hast thou purchased my Love. Alas, alas, what shall I do? Wrent Heart, weep forth my Eyes, when such a valiant, hardy, and most magnanimous Knight must be thus tortured for my sake: Thou hast deceived the Trust I put in thee, by working so foul an Act against my Love: Thou hast robbed me of all Joy, and brought upon me an untimely Death. Further, know this, that if you put to Death these two Knights you carry to your Grave the Name of a Villian. Let them alone, their Death will work you small Content: Or if there be no Remedy, spare them, and sieze first upon me, and cast me into the Sea, for I would not live to see two such Innocents falsely put to Death without Desert. Yea, even



even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with very Hearts Sorrow she would have slain her self, or else violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate Fit, gave strict Command, that she should well be attended by some of his Barons, and especially that she should not so much as speak a Word with either of the Prisoners; thus leaving her to her Laments, and the Christians, both *Valentine* and *Orson*, fast bound in Bands. *Valentine* perceiving himself thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard Hap: Alas, quoth he, how unkind hath Fortune dealt with me? I have spent all my Youth in Travel and Danger, only to find out the Parents that begat me, and see now, when Hope had well nigh set an End to all my Sorrows, I am unhappily fallen into the Hands of mine Enemies, that only seek my Death. Alas, Brother *Orson*, how suddenly are all our Joys blasted, and our Mirth turned into Mourning? On this wise complained *Valentine* and *Orson*; but all this while are they on their Way towards *Portugal*, and shortly after arrived at the Castle of *Ferragus*. Being there arrived, Tydings was brought to the Lady *Bellissant*, that Two Christian Knights were come along with them as Prisoners, at which News she quickly left her Chamber, and came to have a Sight of them; when she was come near unto them, and had well reviewed them, at last she said thus unto them: Children, quoth she, of what Country be you, and where were you Born? Lady, quoth *Valentine*, we be of *France*, and Borr not far from *Paris*: *Ferragus* perceiving the Lady to speak unto them, sharply rebuked her, saying: Lady, leave your Questioning, for except they renounce their Faith, they shall miserably end their Days in Prison: and therewithal called unto him a Jaylor, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be kept only with Bread and Water. This Misery was not sufficient, but more than that, certain churlish Sarazens standing by, smote these two Children with their Fists and Staves.

After *Ferragus* had committed them, he got him up into his Palace, and called for his Sister *Clerimond* unto him; when she came before him, she could not forbear Tears, which made him thus say unto her: Sister, leave weeping, for I swear by *Mahomet*, you have two long doted upon the Brazen Head, as well appeareth, in that you make your Choice with one of the contrary Religion? But change your Mind; for it is a Shame that you should first take him to Husband, that hath been the Overthrow of our Brother the *Green Knight*, next a Christian, whom our Laws do abhor. Forbear (I say therefore) and be ruled by my Direction, and I will raise you Fortunes, by matching you to that puissant King of *Trompart*. Forget, I say, these

two French-men, for thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the Head. Brother (quoth *Clerimond*) it behoveth me to obey you ; for I plainly see I must let go the thing I cannot have ; for whereas force constraineth, fear hath little Power, and necessity often preventeth Truth. These discourses finished, *Ferragus* departed with his Queen and other attendants, and entering the Great Hall, with very much Honour and Reverence they received the Lady *Clerimond*, the Queen thus saying unto her : Sister, welcome, for I have long desired to have a Sight of you. Lady (quoth *Clerimond*) I give you a Million of thanks ? but know this, that I am Right heavy and sad for two Christian Knights that are come hither under colour of Friendship and Love, brought over by my Brother's fair promises, and now to be violently Handled, as to be thrown into a Dungeon, and also threatned to Death. This Sister, even this, wounds my Soul, and splitteth my very Heart in sunder. Alas, Sister, pitty me, for one of these Knights should be my Husband, amongst all men living, he is the comliest, valiantest, and hardest Knight that liveth upon the Face of the Earth. Again dear (dear Sister) by force of Arms hath he conquered his Foe, and won my Love : Wherefore Lady pitty my distressed Estate ; and let me see that Christian Lady you so long have kept within this Castle. Sister (said the Queen) I shall gladly consent to your desire herein ; and so bringing them together, the Lady *Bellissant* said thus unto her : Lady, what is your will with me ? Speak on, for I would Gladly hear any thing you have to say. Then thus, I bring you Joyful Tydings, and yet the end of my Tale will be as sorrowful as the beginning is Joyful ; know this, that I am not ignorant of your Estate and Dignity, for you are Sister to *Pepin* King of *France*, and Wife unto the Emperor of *Greece*, who wrongfully banished you his Country ; Soon after your Exile, you were Delivered of two fair Sons in a Forrest, one of which was taken from you by a Bear, and the other you lost you know not how. All this is true. Nay Lady, your Children are both Alive, and I can tell you were to find them. At these words *Bellissant* fell into a swoon for Joy ; *Clerimond* quickly Recovered her again, and then the Lady said unto her ; Fair Damosel, how came all these things to your understanding ? Then *Clerimond* Related the whole story ; how *Ferragus* her Brother by Subtilty and Treason had put them into a Dungeon. *Bellissant* hearing her two Children were imprisoned by *Ferragus*, made great lamentation, inso-much that the Wife of *Ferragus* entered the Hall, to understand the cause of their mournful clamours ; *Clerimond* told the Queen all from point to point. Well, said the Queen, be appeased, and dissemble the Cause from the King,

King, for if he have any Knowledge thereof, it will make him rather so much the worse than better affected, either to them or you.

Chap. XXIV. *How Pacolet, the Dwarf, comforted the two Ladies.*

AS these three Ladies were conferring about the Matter, into the Chamber came *Pacolet* the Dwarf, that was now come from his Wooden Horse. When *Clerimond* saw him, she wept bitterly, and said, Alas! *Pacolet*, what Injury have I done unto thee, that thou shouldest thus rob me of all my Joys at once? For I am well assured that thou mightest have given me Warning of all these Miseries. Lady, quoth *Pacolet*, be not so highly displeased at me, for I protest I am ignorant of all that hath betided you; but seeing you have began these bitter Bickerings, I swear my Art shall utterly forsake me, but I will find a Remedy for you to avenge your self, and to that purpose, I here vow all my Service unto you and *Valentine* while Life doth last. Friend (quoth the Lady *Bellissant*) if thou canst but free my Two Children out of Prison, I shall acknowledge my self highly indebted to thee, and I will recompence thy Labours every way. Lady (quoth *Pacolet*) no more take you Care, but comfort your self, and e'er long you shall well perceive my crafty Work to take such Effect by my Art, that you shall have cause to remember me while you have a Day to live.

Chap. XXV. *How by Art Pacolet set free Valentine and Orson from the Prison of Ferragus, and conducted them out of his Confinement, with their Mother and fair Clerimond.*

IT chanced that one Day *Ferragus* made a great Feast for all his Nobles, which Day they passed in such revelling and Mirth, that the Night growing late, they all betook themselves to rest. Being all at Rest, *Pacolet* was still watchful to give the Ladies Content, and coming to a great Tower, whose Gates were Brass, and surely locked, by his Enchantment the Gates flew open, and he entred thereinto. Anon he came unto the Door of the Prison, where the Ladies two Sons lay bound, and as soon as he touched the Door, the Locks break, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark Dungeon, and hearing the Door open, were greatly perplex'd, for they looked for nothing but present Death; and at last *Valentine* began to weep, but *Orson* said unto him: Take Courage Brother, for it behoveth us to prepare for Death: And sith it is so, he that first entereth here to lay Hands upon me, shall dearly pay for his Adventure: With that he laid hold of a great Iron

Iron Bar that lay there by : But at last *Pacolet* speak unto them, saying, Lords, Fear me not, for I am come to set you free from forth this Dungeon, wherefore make no Noise, but follow me, and before the Morrow Sun, I shall bring you both unto your Mother. *Valentine* at this Speech rejoyced greatly, but *Orson* beholding him with an austere Look, would not give any Credit to his Words. *Pacolet* at the fierce Look of *Orson* was much astonished, insomuch that he gave back, but by the words of *Valentine* he was much recomforted, and *Orson's* Fury abated.

After this, *Pacolet* led them to the Chamber whereas these two sorrowful Ladies sat in mournful Tears. When he came unto the Door of the Chamber, it was fast locked, but he did easily open it. After they entered in, *Pacolet* so wrought with his Charms, that all that was thereabouts fell into a heavy and deep Sleep, and knew nothing of their coming. Being in the Chamber where the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but she suddenly falling into a Swoond, speaking unto them never a word ; But the Lady *Clerimond* pitiously said thus unto *Valentine* : Alas (fair Kt.) this is the Mother that bare you, who for the Love and Joy of you is fallen into this Extasie. Then *Valentine* embraced her, and took her up in his Arms ; and *Orson* also clasped her about the Middle, saying unto her, Sweet Mother, speak unto me, and then he kissed her tender Lips, but all this while she speak never a Word, but at last they all Three fell flat upon the Earth in a Swoond, and there lay panting for Breath a long Season, while the fair Lady *Clerimond* stood over them, bewailing this strange Accident : At last coming to themselves again, the Mother said unto them weeping : Alas ! my Children, for your sakes have I suffered more Pain and Anguish than ever poor Woman was able to undergo, and you Two the only Cause of these my dolorous Passions ; but sith the Gods have so ordained, that I may once see you, and embrace you before my Death, all my Grievs are vanquished, and become no Burden unto me : But tell me, how you have been preserved ever since your Birth, and in what Country, and with whom have you remained ? for it would glad me to hear the Event thereof. At last, she having ended her words, *Valentine* began the pitious Story of all their Miseries, even to that present Hour. *Valentine* having finished his sad Tale, by which the Empress *Bellissant* clearly knew that they were both her natural Children, wailing with many more Tears than before, she was like to have fallen into a Swoond again, but *Pacolet* prevented her, who was at that Instant in the Chamber, saying unto her : Lady, leave these Laments, and let us think how we may depart from *Portugal*, and so rid us out of the Subjection of King *Ferragus*. Alas, said *Clerimond*, my Love, remember

member the Oath that you have made unto me, to make me your Wife. Dear Lady (quoth *Valentine*) what I have promised I will perform, but at this present, the Love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me near the Heart.

These Words of *Valentine* being ended, *Orson* said unto *Pacolet*, Go open me the Door of *Ferragus*, and with these Hands I shall work his final downfall and overthrow. *Pacolet* answered, Come, go along with me, and I shall gladly open it to fulfil this your desire. But know this, if you Murther him, you shall lose the Love of my Brother the *Green Knight*, who may divers and sundry Ways do us Displeasure. Quoth *Valentine*, you say truth, and I agree unto this your Wise and good Motion, for I would not have you Guilty of such a Crime, as the Death of this your Brother, for to gain the whole World.

At this very Hour they departed the City, and *Pacolet* opened the Gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a Ship ready Rigged, and having a fair Gale of Wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of *Clerimond*: Whither being once come, they refreshed themselves with Pleasures.

Chap. XXVI, How Valentine and Orson escaped the Castle of Ferragus, and sailed with the two Ladies into Aquitain.

Valentine being come, and safely arrived at the Castle of *Clerimond*, could no so content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of *Ferragus*, fearing lest he should follow them, and put them into fresh Dangers. Therefore to prevent all occasions of Further Mischief, he got him down unto one of the Ports, causing the Marriners their present to victual their Ships afresh, and also provide good store of Munition to be in readines upon all occasions. Having thus done, he returned again unto the Castle without any Suspicion: Being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother *Bellisant*, and the Lady *Clerimond*, saying, That he would suddenly depart from *Greece*, towards *Constantinople*, to see his Father the Emperor, who, without any just Cause, had banish'd his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with *Orson* and *Pacolet*.

The next Day they took Shipping and went on their Voyage, and at break of Day, the Jaylor (according to his accustomed manner) went to the Tower to visit the Prisoners, and to bear them their Allowance of Bread and Water. Coming unto the Gates, he found them all open, and the Prisoners gone; he suddenly returned to the King, and said unto him: Great King,

O

Mercy

Mercy, for this Night I have lost the two Christian Knights that you had delivered to Prison. He had no sooner done speaking, but another Messenger appeared, and said: O! King, a Greater mischief than this has likewise happen'd this Night, for the Christian Woman whom you have kept so many Years, is this Night escaped away, and hath carry'd along with her your Sister *Clerimond*. *Ferragus* understanding these harsh tydings, all enraged, began to tear his Hair, that he was as a mad Man amongst his Barons, and suddenly causing them to be armed, he maed them to pursue and follow them: So he betaking himself to his Club, issued out the fore most.

He was a mighty Man, who was in Stature about thirteen Foot in Height. Being out of the town, he calling his Men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none pass he met withal, but he demanded tidings of them, yet he could not hear of them; for *Pacoley* by his Art was too subtile for *Ferragus*. At last being tired with pursuit, he swore that he would besiege the Castle of *Clerimond*, for he did think assuredly to find her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus enraged, he swore by *Mahomet* that he would either find *Clerimond*, and all her Company, or else he would shake all *Christendom*. and so departed the Castle.

Chap. XXVII. *How King Ferragus assembled all his Men of War, to take Revenge upon Valentine, and his Sister Clerimond, and how he followed them into Aquitain.*

Vhen *Ferragus* had long laboured, and could hear no tidings of the Christians, and his Sister *Clerimond*, he was grieved, and in his Fury sent for all his Men of War on every side, presently to assemble themselves to take Sea, and follow *Valentine*, to try if they could find him, and bring him back again. But when they had spent many Daies, and affected nothing, they returned every Man to his Home, and rested from their fruitless toil. Whilst *Ferragus* and his forces were thus scowring the flowing Seas, *Valentine* and *Orson* were entered the City of *Aquitain*: being there, they dissembled their Estate, and as private Persons, lodged in a House of a Burgeess of the Town. *Valentine* would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke *Savary*, but *Orson*, thereunto would not agree, for he having a further reach of Policy, said thus unto him: Brother, I find by small Experience, that Women are Unconstant, therefore hearken to my Advice, let us only see and try, how the Lady *Fexon* standeth affected towards me, and herein

we shall try her constancy. Brother (quoth *Valentine*) I shall Right willingly agree hereto. Then *Orson* took upon him the Habit of a Knight Errant, and entered the Great Hall, taking *Pacoler* the Dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he saluted him with all Reverence. The Duke observing well his behaviour, took him to be *Orson* that thus demeaned himself, but after finding by his Speech he was like to be deceived, he said: Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly Adventure to do you service in any manner you will imploy me. Knight (quoth the Duke) I accept your proffered Service, and will give you Saltery enough to content you, insomuch that if you will not depart my service before I give you leave, I shall give you such Riches, that all the stock you came from, could never Raise. Thanks, great Duke, quoth *Orson*, for your Liberal Heart, and I here Vow e'er I depart, to deserve your Love and Liberallity.

Hereupon the Duke requested him to visit his Court, and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in present pay one Hundred and Fifty Pounds, making him withal a Companion for the Court. *Orson* thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himself worthy of his Preferment, and ever so carried himself at meat, that every Man delighted in his company. Amongst the Rest, the fair Lady *Fezon*, that was sworn his Wife, grew wondrous heavy and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not that it was *Orson*, whom she had held; and thus passed forth the Dinner time. Dinner being done. *Orson* took his leave for that time, and returned to his Lodging, where his Mother and the Lady *Clerimond* had taken up their Residence. *Orson* being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related to them the Whole passage between him and the Duke, which when they heard, they much rejoiced thereat; but this joy lasted not long, for there came sudden News, that *Ferragus* had sent Messengers to the Duke of *Aquitain* to proclaim open Wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome News, presently provided both Men and Provision, to resist so proud an Enemy. *Ferragus* according to his purpose, suddenly arrived before *Aquitain*, even in the very same place, whereas his Brother the *Green Knight* had pitched Pavillions, when that *Orson* became his vanquisher; by this means much hurt redounded unto the Country, and Provinces thereabout, whereas the Sarazens Army lay in Readiness, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to subdue, and over run the whole Country before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) the worthy Duke of *Aquitain*, being of a Magnanimous Courage, assembled all his

his Men of War, and being thus put in a Readiness, he suddenly issued out of the Town, venturing to raise the Siege. Amongst the rest, *Valentine* and *Orson* made their Appearance, being also accompanied with little *Pacolet*, but these three were not known unto any at that time: Where we will now leave them a little, to hear what followeth.

Chap. XXVIII. *How the Duke of Aquitaine was taken Prisoner in the Battle by Ferragus, and how Orson set him free by the help of Pacolet.*

THE Duke of *Aquitain* calling to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present battle the next Morrow, so calling up all his Forces, and placing them in a Readiness, there happened a bloody Battle before the City of *Aquitain*, and many a brave Leader on both Parts there lost their Lives. The Gyant *Ferragus* himself was amongst the Thickest, gathering himself as near as he could unto the Standard-bearer. The chief Men Slain in this Battle, were six valiant Knights, that is to say, *Baudumain*, *Bondry*, *William*, *Galeram*, *Anthony* the good Marshal, and *Gloriam* the Hardy; all near about the Duke of *Aquitain*, and they that had the chief Command throughout his Camp. This happening, the Christians were forced to fall Back, whereby the Duke himself was begirt with Enemies, so that none might come to Succour him; yet in the midst of these Dangers, he bare himself most valiant, and still cryed, *Aquitain, Aquitain*. My Noble Hearts fight on for *Aquitain*; but in the End, all little availed, *Ferragus* having once gotten a Sight of him, came near, and at last took him Prisoner, and led him to his Pavilion. *Ferragus* having thus bestowed the Duke, came up again to the Battle, which struck such an amazement into the Hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the Field, especially, because they had lost the Duke, their Lord and Master. *Valentine* and *Orson* seeing them thus to waver, came to them with all the Speed they could, and cryed to them with a loud Voice: Valiant Men of *Aquitain*, shew your selves Men, Run not away in time of Extremity, for if you do, lamentable will be your Reproach, be Hardy and Courageous; once again let us try the Fortune of the Day.

These two Knights having thus done speaking, the People began afresh to gather up their scattered Forces, and turned them once more on the Sarazens, with a double Courage. By this time Tydings was brought into the City, that the Duke was taken Prisoner, at which ill News the Lady *Feron* lamented more than all the Rest; saying with a heavy Heart, shed-
ing

ing Tears: Alas my Father! now is your Life in Hazard, for from these Sarazens there is no Hope of any Mercy. Farewel sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left a dejected Orphan. Alas *Orson*, my Love, thy long and tedious staying abroad doth much distemper me, for if you were here present, there would be some Hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, hewing forth his Way with his Sword. *Orson* on the other Side was not Idle, for he had taken an Oath that he would free the Duke from Captivity, or leave his Body amongst the Rest. *Pacolet* the Magician and Dwarf, promised *Orson* aid and assistance at need; and thus all busied and nigh Hand wearied, *Orson* put Spurs to his Horse, and ran violently throw the Battle, and escaped: *Orson* and *Pacolet* being past Danger, hurled away their own Shields, and hanging about their Necks the Shields of the *Sarazens*, set forth with the Image of *Mahomet* in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite throw the Camp of the *Pagans*, for *Pacolet* could speak their Language Right well. Now are they come unto the Pavilion of *Ferragus*, where the Duke lay in Bands, thinking to have released him: But *Pacolet* perceiving the Number of his Guard to be too mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his Charms into a deadly Sleep: Being thus made fast, he came unto the Duke and said unto him: Come with us presently, mount this Horse, for we are come to set you free from the Power of *Ferragus*; if you doubt what I am, I am the Knight which in your Hall demanded Wages of you, and you allowed me Liberally. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the Power of all the *Pagans* here assembled, for I will surely be your Guide through the Wicked Rout. Knight, quoth the Duke, you are a welcome Man to my distressed Hands, and therefore for your dangerous Enterprize, in working my deliverance, I shall give you my fair Daughter *Fezon* in Marriage. Indeed (I must confess) I had given her not long to a Knight, but he was Wild and Savage, and he never had the use of his Tongue, but by Reason of his long Absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my Daughter Husbandless; but to be short, take her for this thy Noble Act, and with her I freely give the half of my Dukedom, Thanks, quoth the Knight, such a Gift is not to be refused; but let that pass, and let us make ready for our Escape, that we may Return unto our discomforted Forces. Having thus said, they all three took their Way back again through the Camp of the Enemy, without disturbance; all this while was *Valentine* in the Army, demanding what was become of his Brother *Orson*, but he found no Man could tell him any Tydings of him, he grew

vondrous heavy and sad, fearing very much that he had been slain in the conflict of the Battle.

Thus passed *Valentine* from place to place, to find out his Brother *Orson*, and with a Resolute mind rushed afresh into the Battle, and as a Man distracted, he laid so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand before him: *Ferragus* espying him so valiant, came up to close him, and having gotten him once in chase, never left him, until he had slain his Horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his Horse, *Ferragus* seized on him as his Prisoner, causing him to be bound Hand and Foot, taking an Oath by *Mahomet*; that he should not escape from Death, though there were not a Man more to be had throughout the whole Land; but this Oath was broken, for as, he was leading his Prisoner *Valentine* fast bound along the Field, *Orson*, *Paolet*, and the Duke of *Aquitain* set upon him, *Orson* crying out, Let him not escape us; and therewithal put Spurs to his Horse, and ran so fiercely against the Pagan *Ferragus*, that both he and *Valentine*, his Prisoner, fell to the Earth; the Gyant *Ferragus* quickly regained his Feet, and left *Valentine*, who fearing, began to Run away. *Orson* espying him, cried out, Brother, Return again, and fear nothing; hereupon *Valentine* was new mounted: When the Christians saw the Duke again at liberty, their courages again increased, their Forces doubled, and with joy of Heart they cried out aloud: *Long Live the Duke of Aquitain*. This sudden Noise much amazed the *Sarazens*, insomuch that *Ferragus* was glad to flee, and Raife his Siege: When the Men of *Aquitain* heard the Retreat, they Recovered themselves again into the City. The Battle being thus ended, *Valentine* and *Paolet* returned to their Lodging, but *Orson* went along with the Duke to his Pallace, thether being come, he called before him all his Nobles, and his Daughter *Fezon*; being all Assembled, he called *Orson* unto him, demanding of him his Name: Sir, quoth he, I am called *Gregory*. Then said the Duke thus before them all, Lords, I give you to understand, that above all Men living, I am the most beholding to this Knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for you Daughter *Fezon*, it is my pleasure, that above all Men, you accept this Knight for your Husband; Daughter, you have good cause to love him well, for by him I am made a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there assembled agreed willingly hereunto, affirming that she could do no less than to submit to her Fathers Will, and the Rather considering the Dangers that by him had been prevented: *Orson* hearing all this, still concealed himself, till he had further assayed the Constancy of the

the Lady *Fezon*, acquainting his Brother *Valentine* what he had purposed to do, as ensueth in the next Chapter.

Chap. XXIX. *How Orson tryed the Constancy of the Lady Fezon, before he Married her.*

O*rson* having a desire to try the Constancy of *Fezon*: at last replied thus unto the Duke: Sir, for the Honour you have vouchsafed me, I Rest ever thankful for the same; but for your Daughter, it were most requisite that I should see how she stands affected towards me, and likewise fit for her to make choice of such a Man as is of equal Birth with hers; and therefore if it please you, let her answer for her self. With these Words he entered into the Chamber of fair *Fezon*, and sitting down by her, he took her by the Hand, and said unto her. Lady, your Beauty hath so enlarged my Heart, that without your favour and love, I am an unfortunate Man: Your Father is willing that I should enjoy you, if you please so also, then may I justly vaunt, that I have won the fairest Lady living, and will prove a constance Knight whilst I have breath; if you consent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight, (quoth the Lady,) you ought to forbear, for all your labour is lost. It is true, I love all Knights, yea, all good Men too, in the Rule of Honour; but as for him whom I intend to make my Husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why? But fair Lady (quoth *Orson*) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to please you; Sir, (said she) it is Reason that I obey my Father? But if so be that my Father will constrain me to break my faith, and forsake him that vanquished the *Green Knight*, I will rather leave my Father, than once offer to break my Faith. Lady (quoth *Orson*) I wonder how you can set your affections on such a Man, for he is of a Wild nature and disposition; besides as your Father Reporteth, is dum, and cannot speak a Word. True (quoth the Lady) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithful Affection, to whom my faith is already fixed; and therefore stay your Suit, for I will never alter, nor change my mind from him.

Orson hereat grew wondrous Joyful, to hear the wise answer of *Fezon*, and took his leave of her; and came again to the Duke, saying, great Duke, I am returned from your Daughter, for she hath given me an utter denial, saying; that she will never have no other Husband than he that conquered the *Green Knight*. Quoth, the Duke, care not for her denial, for she shall not Rule her own will, but be you a Little patient this Day, and I will talk with her my self. Thanks mighty Duke (quoth he) I am much beholding

unto you, and so left the Court, and came to the Lodging of his Brother *Valentine*, to whom he related the whole Matter of his proceedings with the Lady *Fezon*. Brother (said *Valentine*) you now know and find her Faithful; but let us go together to the Palace, for I am assured the Duke will give me good entertainment. Brother (said *Orson*) do as you Please: *Valentine* clad himself in Rich Apparel, and *Orson* put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entred into *Aquitain*, and thus accompanied with *Pacolet*, they went towards the Palace; and as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his Daughter, in the Presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to Neglect my command thus, in Rejecting the Knight, of whose Love I have made sufficient Tryal, for he hath saved my Life? Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to Solicite me no Farther in this Matter, seeing you know assuredly that I have given my promise to him that vanquished the *Green Knight*: What greater shame can there be than to break my promise which I have made already? If by you I am constrained, the Danger light upon you, and let me be Innocent. As they were thus discoursing, the Duke espied *Valentine* and *Orson* coming towards him, whom he embraced and honourably entreated, *Orson* having saluted the Duke, passed towards the Lady *Fezon*, who received him with a smiling Countenance, and said unto him: You are welcome above all others, your long Absence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not come now in as you did, my Father had bestowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth *Orson*) I have learned to Speak since I was with you last, and am the very same Man that Yesterday courted you in your Chamber: All which pleased the Lady exceedingly. So *Orson* went into the Chamber, and put on Rich Apparel: Being thus attired, he entered the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming embraced him kindly, and said Son, pardon my Rashness, in that I would have given away thy Love to another, for I was fully perswaded that thou wouldest never have returned. Sir, quoth *Orson*, I forgive you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where, they had spent their Time, since their departure? *Orson* told him their whole Progress, and what Dangers they escaped, and withal, how they two were the Sons of the Emperor of *Constantinople*, and *Bellisant*, Sister to King *Pepin* of *France*, whom they had lately found in *Portugal*. The Duke hearing that their Decent was of Royal Blood, was Right glad thereat, and said: You are worthy of all Honour by Reason of your Birth, but I am sorry that your Father the Emperor, and your Uncle King *Pepin*, are so hardly besieged by the *Sarazens*, and that unless speedy Aid be sent unto them, they will be forced to yield them-

themselves. *Valentine* giving good Ear unto this Relation, grew exceeding sad, but *Pacolet* at last put him somewhat out of his Dumps, and said Leave off your sorrowing, for e'er to Morrow Night I shall find you to Constantinople. But (quoth *Valentine*) it must be then by the Devils Means. Sir, said *Pacolet*, Mount you upon my Wooden Horse, and try the Event that will follow after. *Valentine* answered, that will I do, for I desire nothing so much as the Sight of my Father, whom I never saw. *Valentine* on the Morrow prepared to Depart: But before his departure, the Duke married his Daughter unto *Orson*, in the Presence of the Lady *Bellisant*, and the Lady *Clerimond*, with the Consent of his Nobles that were at the Wedding, where there was great Triumphs: And in this Assembly there was a Spy, who observed all the Proceedings, and gave Intelligence thereof unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* had received these Tydings, he vowed by *Mahomet* to be revenged on them all, but especially on *Pacolet*, for stealing away his Sister *Clerimond*, whom he so much loved, and ranked her among the Christians.

Chap. XXX. How *Ferragus* the Gyant strengthened his Forces by the Aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimain*.

F*erragus* being out of Hope to get Revenge on the two Knights, and his Sister *Clerimond*, called unto him a Messenger, and delivered to him divers Letters of State, especially one of them was to King *Trompart*, of whom he desired Aid against his Enemies; all which, if he could speedily accomplish, he would give unto him for his Wife, his Sister *Clerimond*. At the Farewel of his Letter, he desired him to bring along with him the Enchanter *Adrimain*. Here leave we the Gyant, and Return to *Valentine*, who by this Time is taking his leave for Constantinople. But in the End he said thus unto the Duke, and *Orson* his Brother: Lords, with you I leave my lovely *Clerimond*. *Valentine*, quoth the Duke, take you no thought for her, for I shall have a Fatherly Eye-over her, as well as I have over my Daughter *Fozon*.

Valentine having taken leave, at last came to *Clerimond*, who, loath to part with him, wept bitterly, whereby he was forced to leave her, and turning him to his Brother *Orson*, said thus, Brother, commend me to my Father the Emperor, and to my Uncle King *Pepin*, and tell them e'er long I will visit them. Brother (quoth *Valentine*) I shall Remember you, and so departed. *Orson* still remained in the Palace, but *Valentine* had a Duty yet more to do; Namely, to take his leave of his Mother: But when

she clapt him Round with her Arms, but was not able to speak : *Valentine* perceiving her Natural Affection, Re-comforted, her in the best manner he could, but all was in vain.

Chap. XXXI. *Of the pittiful Tale the Empress made to Valentine her Son, before his farewel into Constantinople, and what Speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.*

Valentine being overcome with the lamentation of his Mother, at last said thus unto her : O ! Mother, leave off, be not so careful of me, for if I escape danger, I shall gladly see you here again ; in the mean space take care of my fair *Clerimond*, and let her be assured of my loyalty towards her. Alas, my Son, now will it come to light that I have been basely and falsly banished my Husbands Bed and Country, but yet do thus much for me, commend me to the Emperor, and also to my Brother King *Pepin*, and say unto them in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be such a Man breathing, that will but once open his Mouth to the contrary, Fight thou for me, and Justly maintain my unspotted Chastity. Mother (quoth *Valentine*) all this, and more, I shall perform, and e'er many Months have run their course, I shall cause my Father to Receive you again, and ask you pardon for his Rash proceedings. So now he takes his last farewel of his dear Mother, with this charge, that so soon as they were arrived, he should send *Pacolet* to bring tydings of all that had happened.

Now taketh he his way to the lodging of *Pacolet* whither being come, *Pacolet* made ready his Wooden-horse, and mounting *Valentine* behind him, turned the Pin the same way he would take and suddenly they were mounted in the Air so swiftly, that e'er the morrow at Noon, they were in the Sight of Constantinople. *Valentine* was wondrous joyful, that he was so near the place he so much desired to see, and by the help of *Pacolet* the Enchanter, came that Night to the Great Hall, where the Emperor accompanied with King *Pepin*, sat both at Supper. *Valentine* being come into such an unknown presence, grew very bashful, but the Green Knight sitting at the Table, with the Emperor and King *Pepin*, espied *Valentine*, and knew him, so did King *Pepin* take knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperor ; Great Emperor, behold here one of our own Blood, a Valiant Knight, and your own natural Son. The Emperor hearing this was much amazed, and Rising from the Table, made towards him and kissed him : The Green Knight was the first that took him in his Arms, and embraced

braced him, then King *Pepin* next, and lastly, the Emperor his Father, who was greatly ashamed at his fact, in Banishing his unspotted and guiltless Wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old Servant *Blindiman*, who well observed *Pacolet*, ever since he saw him in *Portugal*, and at last went he unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistress, the Lady *Pollisant*: *Pacolet* satisfied him in all his demands, so that exceeding great Joy and Gladness was heard about the City for the life of *Valentine*, and People came from all parts to behold the Emperor's Son, the Valiant Knight. *Valentine* seeing such continual Recourse of all Estates gathering about him, he said unto them: Lords, Knights, and Barons here assembled, who seem will pleased to behold my Person. I cannot yield unto you any other Recompence but thanks, and especially to my Uncle King *Pepin*, who hath ever fostered me, even from my Cradle; and had it not been for him, I had perished, by reason of a sharp Edict published by my Father, who by the false suggestion of a Dead Traytor, banished my Mother from his Bed and Country. Wherefore to clear her Innocency, I (as her Natural Son) offer my Body in Combat against any false Traytor whatsoever.

Chap. XXXII. *How Valentine and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners in the Battle of Constantinople, by the Souldan Moradin and his Men.*

VWhen the Emperor perceived his Son to be so much moved for the dishonour which was done unto his Mother the Empress, he wept for very Grief of Heart, and said thus unto his Son: My Son, I have no doubt of thee to be my Son, neither of thy Manhood, in offering to Revenge her wrongs upon the Traytor that accused her, but he is fallen already by the Sword of a Merchant, in the Presence of thy Uncle *Pepin*, my self, and divers others of high Estate. At his Death he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time I have sent divers and sundry Messengers into all Nations, to hear Tidings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired wish: Therefore I pray thee (if thou canst) tell me some Glad Tidings of her. Father (saith *Valentine*) I know somewhat, for Yester-Night I both saw her and speak with her in *Aquitain*; telling him besides, that *Pacolet* the Enchanter had suddenly brought him thither by Art, rather than good speed. The Emperor hearing such Gladsome News from his Son, caused great Triumphs through

throughout the City of *Constantinople*. When the *Sarazens* heard such shouts and revelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himself in a Readiness. The *Souldan* round begirt *Constantinople*, famishing up all the Inhabitants most lamentable to behold. At last these Tydings came to the Ears of *Valentine*, and the *Green Knight*, who Arming themselves, came into the City, and said; Lords, you well perceive the extremity in which we are in; be yet couragious and stand to it, and there is Hopes of Recovery, wherefore follow my Counsel, Issue forth some number of you to Forrage for some Victuals, whilst I, accompanied with 2000 men, set upon the *Sarazens*. They did as he advised. hem, and



within short Time they behaved themselves so valiantly, that they gained from the Enemy 300 Chariots laden with all Sorts of Victuals. Having thus seized the Victuals, they were conducting the same into the City, but the *Souldan* sore vexed at his Losses, got between the City and them, thinking to have defeated them from Entrance, but King *Pepin* espying their Policy, and how they had stop'd up the passage. presently couched his Spear,

Spear, and ran upon the *Souldan* so violently, that he bared the proud *Pagan* to the Earth, then pulling out his Sword at one *Archillon*, a very valiant Commander, with such Fury, that he struck him out of the Saddle. *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* perceiving the great Courage of King *Pepin*, and what fortune he had in the Field, at that present entred freshly into the Battle, and with a Resolute Courage, even in the Presence of the *Souldan*, he hewed down the chief Standard of the *Sarazens*. The Standard being overthrown, *Valentine* addressed him against the *Souldan* himself, and with his Spear he so encountred him, that he so foiled him, as he could scarcely sit his Horse. *Moraldus*, one of the chief Commanders was Slain, and his Admiral taken Prisoner by the *Green Knight*, with other Exploits performed on both Parts. But mark what Follows, these two Knights were so Triumphant in their uncertain Victory, that they pressed the Enemy so far within Danger, that when they would Return they could not, and so consequently were taken Prisoners by the *Sarazens*, and brought before the *Souldan*. The *Souldan* having gotten them in Bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his *Mahomet*, that they should never escape with Life, but gave present commandment to Raise up a Gibbet before the City Walls, and presently in the Sight of all his Enemies to Hang them up. Now were *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* in a great Fear, but we will leave them a little, and Return to those Christians that had gotten great Booty of Victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by Reason that they were encountred by the *Sarazens* Army: In which encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days Bickering. And at last, they espying what desperate Case they stood in, with one Consent issued forth Men, Women, Priests, Clerks, and all Degrees. When the *Pagans* saw their Multitudes, they were forced to retire themselves into their Tents, and by that means the Christians obtained all their Prey of Victuals, and safely conveyed it into the City, altho' with loss of many a Life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the Loss of his Warlike Men, especially for his Son *Valentine*, and the *Green Knight*; most heavy and sad also was the worthy King *Pepin*. *Pacolet* seeing these two Peers take the Matter so heavily, Re-comforted them again, saying on this Manner: Lords leave off your Lamentations, for it shall fare better with *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, than you can Imagine. Friend (said the Emperor) if thy Words prove true, I will advance thy Estate: Sir, said he, shortly you shall make Tryal of my Love and Respect towards you: So he betook him to his Wooden Horse, and departed towards the *Souldans* Host, and came thither just

at the Instant that the Souldan came to Judge *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* to Death; and how it was prevented you shall hear in the Chapter following.

Chap. XXXIII. *How Pacolet, by Enchantment, delivered Valentine and the Green Knight out of the Bondage of the Souldan; and how Pacolet Coxen'd the Souldan when he had him upon his Horse, and instead of carrying him to Portugal, brought him to Constantinople, where he was Hanged.*

ALL being assembled as aforesaid, the Souldan began thus to speak; Lords, here I present before you, these that most incumber the mighty Gyant *Ferragus*, and that which most you ought to respect, is, that one of them hath forsaken his Religion? and for that cause my Judgment is, that he be sent to *Ferragus*, and from him receive punishment fitting his offence: Nay, said the other *Sirazens*, let us never do so; but let them both suffer Death to morrow morn. Lords, (quoth the Souldan) let it be so. These Resolutions thus agreed upon, the Souldan entred his Pavillion to Supper, where being set, *Pacolet* came and saluted him in the Name of *Mahomet*. *Pacolet* (quoth the Souldan) thou art welcome; how fareth *Ferragus* my dear Friend? Sir, (said *Pacolet*) Right well; and by me sends glad some Tydings, if you please to hear them. Right gladly (said the Souldan) I prithe thee begin. Then *Pacolet* drew him aside, out of the hearing of his Attendants, and said: Sir, know this, I am lately come out of *Portugal*, and sent by the fair Wife of *Ferragus*, whose Heart is on fire with the Love she beareth to you; long hath she concealed these her affections, but having power no longer to keep close the Closet of her Breast, she hath committed to me her love, her trust, and what she dares not to utter to any other but my self. Again, *Ferragus* is in *Aquitain*, so that no opportunity should be omitted, therefore come along with me, and stay no longer to Expostulate, for upon my Horse will we suddenly arrive in *Portugal*, and bring you to the fair Ladies sight; *Pacolet*, thou hast more gladdened my Heart than all the Worldly Treasure can afford; true it is, she is the only Woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to affect my Wishes: The Souldan caused *Pacolet* to be highly feasted, so on the morrow they went towards their Journey, but mark what followed; *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* you must conceive, were both in the Pavillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a Sight of *Pacolet*, but durst not make any shew thereof; and *Pacolet* on the other side shewed himself a Flatterer to the Souldan, in eating,

eating, drinking, and revelling at the Souldan's Table, and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the Souldan (in the hearing of all) 'Sir, how dare you venture your noble person so near to this *Green Knight*, and not rather give him his desert, for of all men living, he is most dangerous: First, for the wrongs that he hath committed against his Brother *Ferragus*, bereaving him of *Clerimond*, and giving her in marriage to a Christian Knight, next, he hath renounced his *Mahomet*; these things considered, it is fit that he should die, were there no more Men living. Friend (quoth the Souldan) to morrow morning they shall both be hanged. Then the Souldan commanded the Prisoners to be strongly Guarded upon pain of Death, and so withdrawing him to his Chamber, left *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* under the conduct of those that most desired their Deaths.

in the dead time of the Night came *Pacolet* unto *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, and first freed them of their Bands, and by Art so charmed all their Wardens, (who slept securely) that he brought them past all danger. Having thus set them at liberty, about the dawning of the Day he came to the Souldan's Tent, crying out so loud unto him: that he awaken'd him; and then *Pacolet* began thus to say unto him: Sir, little appeareth your love to the Wife of *Ferragus*, seeing for her sake you are loath to break one Hours sleep. Whereunto the Souldan replied, thou hast done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a Most fearful Dream; and thus it was, Methoughts a Crow did bear me swiftly thro' the Air, and as she was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and struck at me with his Bill so hard, that the Blood forthwith issued out in abundance; now this Dream maketh me much to fear that *Ferragus* hath some Intelligence of my desires, and meansto Revenge himself upon me. Away Sir, (quoth *Pacolet*) with this childish fear, will you therefore neglect the Love of the Beautious Lady? By *Mahomet* (quoth the Souldan) thou sayest truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this Charge: Sirrah, be secret, if my Uncle *Bryan* ask for me, tell him I am gone a little way to disport with *Pacolet*, then *Pacolet* took the Souldan behind him upon his Wooden Horse, and turning his pin, the Horse rose up into the Air so swiftly, that in a little time they were come to *Constantinople*, even in the Emperor's Palace: The Souldan perceiving *Pacolet's* Horse to make a stay, said thus unto him: Friend, are we at our Journey's end? Yea, and fear nothing, for we are now in *Portugal*, in the Palace of King *Ferragus*. By *Mahomet* (said the Souldan) the Devil hath born us here very quickly. Well (said *Pacolet*) enter you into the great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean space I will hast into the Chamber of the Lady, and presently

Cause you to be brought unto her Bed. Do so, quoth the *Souldan*, for I am even well near Ravished with joy, and shall think each Minute an Hour, till I have my desire.

Now sitteth the *Souldan* in the Hall, attending the coming Back of *Pacolet*, while he in the mean Space, maketh towards the Chamber wherein the Emperor lay; being come to the Door. He gave a great Blow against it, inso much that the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus presumed to disturb the Emperor's Rest? Friend, quoth *Pacolet*, fear not, for I am *Pacolet*, newly come from the *Souldan's* Host, where I have set at Liberty both *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, who were condemned to dye. Besides, say unto the Emperor, that I have brought along with me the *Souldan* himself to be in *Portugal*. Wherefore he may now be revenged on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved Death; the Chamberlain told the Emperor all these Tydings, and King *Pepin* also; so Arming themselves, they came into the Hall where the *Souldan* Sat: The *Souldan* perceiving himself betrayed, cryed out with a loud Voice: Thou false *Pacolet*, Traytor to my Person, I vow to be revenged upon thee for thy disloyal Practice towards me, and therewithal drew out his Sword, and like a Mad Man ran up and down the Hall, striking the very Stones so Fiercely, that he made the Fire to fly from those fenceless Walls: As he was in this madding Fit, the Attendants entered towards him with Torches. The *Souldan* espying them, defended himself so Fiercely, that he Slew the Squire that attended upon King *Pepin*: This Act of his fired the Courage of the King, that he made a Blow at him, and felled him to the Earth. Being fallen, they bound him Hand and Foot, and in the Morning came *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, who finding the *Souldan* there in Bands, were very joyful.

The Emperor and the King seeing *Valentine*, were joyful for his deliverance, giving great thanks to *Pacolet* for his care over his Son, and withal said, *Pacolet*, one strain more of thy Horse must I Demand; you shall sir (quoth *Pacolet*) and if you will get behind me, I will instantly Transport you into Hell, But Lords, let that pass, and Return unto the Death of the *Souldan*, for if he escape your Hands at this Time, a World of miseries will follow: So that very Hour they proceeded to Judgment, and commanded him to be hanged on the greatest Tower of the Palace, even in very Sight of the *Pagan* Host.

This done, the *Pagans* stood as Men confounded and amazed, to see him here hanging, and wondered how he came within the City, but at last *Bryan* his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traytor *Pacolet*. After they had long lamented the Death of the *Souldan*, they gathered

ed themselves to Council, and in his stead chose his Uncle *Bryan Souldan*, After all these Things done, *Pacolet* took his leave of the Emperor, and returned into *Aquitain*, to comfort the Lady *Clerimond*, as he promised: but before his Departure, *Valentine* came unto him and said: *Pacolet*, at your coming into *Aquitain*, salute from me my Mother *Bellifant*, and my loving Lady *Clerimond*, my Brother *Orson*, and the good Duke of *Aquitain*, with the rest of his Nobles; and above all the rest, deliver this to my Mother, by which she shall understand our whole proceedings here; Sir, said *Pacolet*, all this I shall willingly Perform: So taking his Horse, he leapt upon him, and he Flew up into the Air, as Swift as Smoak.

The next Morning *Pacolet* was come to his Journeies End, and finding the Duke of *Aquitain*, the Empress *Bellifant*, *Orson* and *Clerimond* all in safety, he saluted them all, and delivered them Letters, who said: Lady, your Son *Valentine* greeteth you well, shewing you, that the Emperor is Right Sorrowful about your Banishment, and hath required the Treason of the Traytor, with the Loss of his Life, wherefore he promiseth, that so soon as he can free his Country from the Incursions of the *Sarazens*, to come himself in Person, and then forth-with bring with him the *Green Knight*, whom *Orson* had vanquished. The Lady hearing these joyful Tydings suddenly fell into a Swound; but *Orson* perceiving it, suddenly snatched her up in his Arms, and being somewhat come to herself, she said: My Child, I am justly overcome with joy, in that I understand I am proved Innocent of such abominable Crimes, as I was falsely accused off: but I long to see the Emperor, whom if I might but once again behold, I should not desire longer to live; for I am well enough revenged, and my accuser hath justly suffered a most shameful Death for his Treachery.

Chap. XXXIV. How King Trompart came before Aquitain, to succour Ferragus, and brought with him Adrimain the Enchanter, who betrayed Pacolet, and how the King of India, caused King Trompart's Head to be struck off: And how he would have married with Clerimond; and how Pacolet was revenged on Adrimain in the Shape of a Woman: And how Ferragus was Slain; and how Orson, and the Duke went with their Army to Constantinople, to succour the Emperor: and how Orson led along with him his Mother: and how all the Pagans were Slain before Constantinople. And how the Emperor received his Son, and his Wife Bellifant.

Pacolet being arrived in *Aquitain*, at the same Time that King Trompart came thither to aid Ferragus against the Christians, at whose coming, Ferragus began thus to salute him: Famous King, of your coming I am glad,

lad, hoping by your assistance to get back my Sister *Clerimond*, and to be revenged on all those that have detained her. *Ferragus* (said King *Trompart*) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me *Adrimain* the Enchanter, whose skill shall confound *Pacolet* in his own Art. Thanks gentle King, I am much bound to you for your love, and if he can but get *Pacolet* into my Hands I shall reward him liberally. Sir, (quoth *Adrimain*) put your trust in me, and so taking his leave, betook him to his magick Art. Being provided of all things, amongst the rest. he laded himself with Victuals, and took his way towards *Aquitain*; coming thither, he craved entrance of the Gates to sell his Victuals, which was easily granted. After he had sold all, he went into the Palace, where he chanced on *Pacolet*, whom *Pacolet* knew well. *Adrimain* (quoth *Pacolet*) you are welcome, from whence come you, and what is your Errand? Then said *Adrimain*, you know that long I served K. *Trompart*, yet by Fate I am fallen into a great mischance, for one in his Court having smitten me, because I would not teach him the Principles of my Art, I drew forth my knife and killed him: Now fearing Death, I fled from the Court, and came towards you for succour, and will prove unto you a faithful Servant, so be pleased to accept of me. *Adrimain* (said *Pacolet*) I am content, let it be so, make thee good cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, *Adrimain* saw the fair *Clerimond* pass thro' the Hall, who presently demanded what Lady it was. Then said *Pacolet*, it is the fair Sister of *Ferragus*, who must be married to a right valiant Knight: Whilst they were thus in conference came *Orson* unto them, and said, Gentlemen, I would gladly wish that one of your Art would shew somewhat to delight the assembly.

At whose words, *Adrimain* drew up a Cup above a Pillar, in such wise, that thro' the Palace (seemingly to all the Company) ran a River, furnished with all sorts of Fish, little and great: When the beholders saw the Water to come up so strongly against them, they were afraid of being drowned: *Pacolet* beholding this feat, amongst the rest, began a Song. and in that Song a Charm, that it seemed to all the Beholders, that a Hart run thorow that River, over-turning all things that stood in his way. After this Hart, ran hunters with their Hounds. This made many of the Beholders leap after thinking to have taken the Hart: but *Pacolet* by his Art, made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This sport (quoth *Orson*) was very well performed; and so the Company breaking up, *Pacolet* led *Adrimain* to his Chamber, to be with him; but proved fatal, for towards midnight *Adrimain* so Enchanted all within the Court, and with them *Pacolet*, that he had time to work all that he desired. Afterwards he went to-

wards

wards the Wooden Horse, and getting him, came into the Chamber of *Clerimond*, and by Art caused her to rise, and make her ready, and setting her on the Horse behind him, came unto a Window, turned the Pin, and suddenly he arrived in the Tent of King *Trompart*. Being come thither, he cried out aloud, saying: Great King, sleep not, but hasten you hither, and you shall see the Present Lady *Clerimond*, whom I have stolen from *Aquitain*, and with her *Pacolet's* Horse. Now (said the King) I well perceive thy love; is this the Sister of *Ferragus*? Yea said *Adrimain*, and I have stolen her away, and also betrayed *Pacolet* my Fellow Magician, for he shall never be Master of his Horse again: Ay, but (said the King) art thou acquainted with the Manner of his Horse? O! long since worthy King, and by vertue of the Pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known to King *Trompart*, he thought to make experience of the Horse himself, and taking *Clerimond* behind him, would Transport her into his own Country and there Marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his Arms (for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted sleep, and set her on the Horse of Wood: All this *Adrimain* was eye-witness of, and said thus to him, My Lord, if you fail one jot of the true use of the Horse, both your self, and the Lady are in very great danger: Fear not that (quoth *Trompart*) and so turning the Pin. he mounted swiftly into the Air, and before the next morning he was two hundred miles on his way, but not at his Journeys end for now awaked the Fair Lady *Clerimond* out of her enchanted sleep, who seeing her self deluded, fell suddenly in to a swoond; this chance struck to the Heart of King *Trompart*, for he was afraid, least she had been dead and so turning the Pin, he stopt the Horse in a Fair green Field by a Fountain then taking the Lady from the Horse, he laid her on the grass, and took a little Water, and cast it on her Face; and the Lady recovering, made such grievous lamentations, that King *Trompart* was well nigh out of his wits. Within this place there was a Shepherd, of whom King *Trompart* required something to eat, which he gave to the Lady, who did eat thereof, and was refreshed: and at last being come again to her speech, she weeping uttered these words: Unhappy I above all creatures, for I have lost my joy by cursed Treason. Alas *Valentine* my love, cursed be he that hath separated us. *Trompart* hearing her so clamourous, reproved her soundly, saying: Lady; leave off these foolish words of the Christian boy, or else I shall separate thy head from thy Body? is it not better for thee to be my Wife, that am sole Lord of this Jurisdiction, than to have a beggarly start-up, that hath neither land nor living? and with these words he would

have kissed her, but the Lady disdainful him, hit him with her fist upon the Mouth.

This strange and unlookt for disdainfulness, put *K. Trompart* in such an anger, that he in a furious Rage Caught her up, and set her upon the Horse again: and turning the Pin the contrary Way, presently, instead of carrying her into his own Country, he lighted in *India*, in the midst of a Market-Place, kept there that Day: The People seeing such a strange Sight, marvelled much thereat: The Lady *Clerimond*, by this time, knew the Horse to be *Pacolet*, and said: Now am I falsly betrayed, and *Pacolet* robbed of his Horse; but my dear *Valentine*, he it is most sticketh at my Heart; for now shall I never see thee more. *Trompart* (thought for all this, that he had been in his own Country) still beating down her pitieous Laments with bitter Words: But this fell out ill for *K. Trompart*, for the King of *India* knew him well: *K. Trompart* being come before the K. of *India*, he bid him Welcome, for you are he that put my Brother to Death; wherefore I will be revenged on thee; and so caused his Head to be smitten off: After the Lady was led into the King's Palace, where he sat in his own Person, and he thus said: Lady, I know now of whence you are, by the bright Splendor of your Face, it hath enthralled my Heart; wherefore, if you Please to be my Wife, I will make you Queen of all this spacious Continent. She (quoth she) you speak Graciously; but to take any Man to Husband, I have made a solemn Vow to refrain the Space of one whole Year, wherefore if it please you, let my Vow be accomplished, and that Time being run out, then will I willingly Consent thereto: Well, said the King, thy Answer is Reasonable, let it be as thou hast said, Perform thy Vow, and remain within my Palace; and he commanded that her Attendance should be as great as if she had been his Queen, allowing her a Chamber of State; into which Chamber she caused to be brought the Wooden Horse that carried her thither, and being there, she placed it in the secretest Place she could devise, and still desired she might be freed out of that Danger. Now we leave her a while and return to *Pacolet*, and look back also to *Aquitain*, and see the Mourning that is made for the Lady *Clerimond*.

The Night after *Adrimain* had betrayed *Pacolet*, great Lamentations were made for the Fair *Clerimond*, throughout the City of *Aquitain*. Moreover when *Pacolet* found *Adrimain* absent, he doubted more, and looking round about the Chamber wherein the Horse stood, he suddenly missed it: all this so falling out, *Pacolet* fell into a most grievous Passion, inso much, as had not *Orson*, at that instant come in, he would have killed himself.

Pacolet being thus Rescued by *Orson*, and beholding the General Sorrow

for the Beauteous Lady *Clerimond*, he began thus to comfort them; Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on that Traytor *Adrimain*, by whom we are all thus wronged. Herewithal he departed, and apparelled himself like a Gallant Maid, and took his Way to the Host of *Ferragus*. Being come amongst the Army, many *Pagans* prayed for her Love, but evermore *Pacolet* excused himself, and said: Pardon me, I pray you, For I am promised already to the Enchanter *Adrimain*, and so they let her pass on. At last *Pacolet* came to the Tent where *Adrimain* was; at which *Adrimain* stood amazed, and was so deeply overcome in Love, that that Night he retained him in his Chamber; but *Pacolet* no wit to seek of his Shifts, made somewhat Squeamish, and said: My Lord, know this, I have been desired of many, but I think you the worthiest to be first served: Daughter (quoth *Adrimain*) fear nothing, make good Cheer, and be merry, for I have a great Desire to thee, and will use thee well: Now he committed the Maiden to one of his Servants, to be served with all the Dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feasted in the Tent of *Ferragus*, *Pacolet* demanded of the Servant of *Adrimain*, what was become of *K. Trompart*, the Servant said, I think he is retired again into his own Country, and carried along with him the Lady *Clerimond*, upon a Horse of Wood, that my Master had given him. *Pacolet* hearing of this, was vexed at the Heart: By this Time was *Adrimain* come unto his Tent, saying to *Pacolet*. Daughter, it is time to go to Rest? See here is the Bed we mean to sport in: Your Will be done, said *Pacolet*: Then *Adrimain* put off his Cloaths, and went into the Bed: *Pacolet* so enchanted him into so strong a Sleep, that awake he could not till the Morning: As he dealt with *Adrimain*, so he did with all round about him; and putting off his Womans Attire, he clad himself in all the Richest Cloaths that *Adrimain* had; and after, with his own Sword, cut off his Head, and bare it away with him: Having thus done, he takes his Way towards the Tent of *Ferragus*, the which he found well Guarded, and there by his Art, he also cast them all into a heavy Sleep. This done, he entered the Tent of *Ferragus*, where he suddenly made him Leap out of his Bed, and Cloath him: And tying him to his Girdle, made him run by his Side, like a Spannel, till he came to the very entrance of the Gates of *Aquitain*.

When *Pacolet* was come to the Gates of the Palace, he found there the Duke himself, accompanied with many of his Barons; and espying *Pacolet*, they said unto him, Where is *Clerimond*, that thou bringest her not again? he answered, Lords be patient a while, I cannot shew you all at once: Know this, I am fully revenged on *Adrimain*, for here I have brought his Head, and here is *Ferragus*, who by my Art I have also surprized, as

you may see. Then said *Orson*, you have done very well. Nay, Lords, more yet have I to say; which is, I have enchanted asleep the Whole host of *Ferragus*, therefore if ever you mean to have Relistless Victory go now. What say you, my Lords? (quoth *Orson*) methinks *Pacolet* hath well advised us, therefore let us go on: So they slaughtered all that lay before them, and put *Ferragus* into a Most filthy, dark, and loathsome Prison, until their Return.

After this great slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into *Aquitain*, and there commanded to have the Gyant *Ferragus* brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted sleep, unto whom the Duke thus said: *Ferragus*, if thou wilt here forsake thy *Mahomet*, and receive Baptism, then thou shalt live, which if thou refuse to do, thou shalt surely dye. Know, said *Ferragus*, I had rather suffer a Thousand Deaths: So he was suddenly beheaded. After his Death, *Orson* took leave of the Duke; and went towards *Constantinople*, to aid his Father the Grecian Emperor, and his Uncle King *Pepin* of *France*, against the unbelieving *Sarazens*, that had strongly besieged the City; but a little before his departure, the Duke said thus unto him: Worthy King, sith you are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you company; *Orson* was very joyful to hear him say so, and gave him thanks; so taking some small time to set things in a Readiness, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and Valiant Knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way, the Empress *Bellissant* much lamented the hard usage of her Lord: But *Orson* pitying her, said: Mother leave off your Tears, and only joy in that you have been fallily accused, which now will much increase your Honour: But I fear most our entrance into the City, which, as I hear, is much troubled with *Sarazens*. Nay, said *Pacolet*, fear not that, for I will work a device to enter, and my self will go before, and tell them so; Do so, said *Orson*, and tell *Valentine* the hard Fortunes of *Clerimond*. Nay, quoth *Pacolet*, not I, I will be no bearer of such sad tydings. Now King *Pepin* and the Emperor being strongly besieged, were in great distress for Victuals within the City, and there was no way to be relieved but by the Sword, Then *Valentine* accompanied with the *Green Knight* and a worthy band of Soldiers, issued out of *Constantinople*, and charged upon 200 Chariots of Victuals of the *Pagans*, and recovered the same, with the Death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this Booty, they made their return towards *Constantinople*, thinking to recover the City, but they were begirt round about; on the one side with the *Soldan*, and on the other with the King of *Arabia*, and thirdly with a King called

Afficion

Afficion. Amongst these Champions fell out a terrible Bloody Conflict, but *Valentine* in single Fight kiled the C. of *Dramageon*, and the K. of *Clarion*. The *Green K.* also behaved himself gallantly, for at one Blow he struck off the shield Arm of the K. of *Morien*, and before that slew his Brother: but all this valour little availed; for in the end they were both taken Prisoners, and led before the Souldan: who having them in his Possession, assembled 15 Pagan Kts. to adjudge them to Death. *Valentine* being thus in bands, greatly lamented the state of the Lady *Clerimond*, taking leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the rest; saying, I must now forsake you all, and never again behold your Faces. The *Green Knight* seeing him so passionate, said, let us dye in a good cause, and welcome Death.

Now was the Souldan set in his chear of State, to proceed to Judgment; in the mean space in comes *Pacolet*, in the midst of the throng, not known of any, and came and stood before the Judgment seat and kneeling down, said, right dear Sir, know this I am a Messenger from your Brother *Godart*, the K. of *Argier*, who to your succour, hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, and by me required on which side your Army shall be ranked. Again, he prays you, if you have any Christian Prisoners, to send them him, and he will send them into his own Country, to draw the Plow; and here stands a Couple of fit instruments for that purpose. The Souldan rejoiced at these Tydings, and commanded he should be highly feasted for that Night: mean time *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, were glad of *Pacolet*'s company. In the Dead time of the Night, *Pacolet* went unto them, and unbound them, and giving to each of them a Horse, bid them follow him. Being out of the Enemies reach, *Pacolet* said thus to them: Lords, be comforted, for in this land is assembled the Duke of *Aquitain*, and the Kt. *Orson*, the noble Empress and the Lady *Fazon*: Ay, but said *Valentine*, why cometh not the fair *Clerimond*? Then answered *Pacolet*, she would have come, but being Sea-sick, was forced to return again to *Aquitain*: So *Valentine* questioned no farther with him. Then *Pacolet* advised them all to go into the City of *Constantinople*, and on the morrow issue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy, in the mean space I will on the other side so bestir my self, that the Host of the Warlike Duke shall come up, and give a fresh Assault. Now the Souldan seeing this shall imagine it be his Brother, the K. of *Argier*. *Pacolet* (said *Valentine*) thou hast well advised, and so it shall be effected: Thus they departed. *Pacolet* took his way to the Duke of *Aquitain*, who was yet on the Sea-shore telling him that he been with the Host of the Souldan, and how he had free *Valentine*, and the *Green Knight*. Then *Orson* answered *Pacolet*, there is yet on thing more to be done, and that is, that to morrow morning, we assail the ho

of the Sarazens on the one side, and they of *Constantinople* on the other, and so by that means we shall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, shall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw up his men in order, and so kept themselves that Night.

The next morning the Emperor and K. *Pepin*, diligently brought forth their men to Fight, and divided their host into five Battles. The first was delivered to *Valentine*, the second to the *Green Kt.* the third to K. *Pepin*, the fourth to *Myllian Daugler*, and the fifth to *Samson of Orleance*, one that bare in his Banner a Bear of Silver. At break of Day these powers issued out of the City, to give an assault upon the Enemy: being come into the Field, they sounded their Instruments, the Noise thereof so affrighted the Sarazens, that they ran out of their Tents, crying, an Alarum, an Alarum. This Battle was extream hot for the Christians that Day, yet the Enemy had no Cause to Boast. K. *Pepin* behaved himself so valiantly, and cried out to his Soldiers; *St. Denis, St. Denis*: Then a Sarazen cried out to the Souldan to Retire, for the Safe-guard of their Lives, for this Night have we lost our two Prisoners, and also there is coming against us a new Supply of a great Army. Then the Souldan thought that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forward, and roused up their Courage doubly, insomuch that they enforced their Christians to fall back, but little availed their pride: for there came upon them the Duke of *Aquitain*, with his Forces, and assailed them so Fiercely, that they put to the Sword, all that did come before them, and thus the Christians conquered. When the Battle was ended, and the Christians had recovered their scattered Forces, *Valentine* and *Orson* came before the Emperor, doing unto him Dutiful Reverence. Father (quoth *Valentine*) here you may behold my Brother *Orson*, whom as yet you never knew; then the Emperor embraced him with Tears, and so did the worthy K. *Pepin*, *Valentine*, *Orson*, the *Green Kt.* *Blandiman*, and *Guidard* the Merchant, he that vanquished the false Arch-Priest. All these, with great Triumph, set out to visit the Tent of the Noble Empress *Bellisant*, and the Lady *Fezon*.

By this Time they are come: When the Emperor saw his Wife *Bellisant*, he leapt off his Horse, and in tears and sighs not being able to speak, he embraced her: And *Valentine* and *Orson* bare them Company in their Lamentations, so did also many of the Rest there assembled. At last words took Place, and the Emperor Re-counted all the hard Dealings that had proceeded against the Empress, requiring Pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the Fates to bring me unto your Sight, I freely forgive all Wrongs; but I long to see the Man that proved my Innocency with his Sword, Love (quoth the Emperor) this is he by whom your

Honour

Honour was preserved. Sir (quoth the Lady) you ought to be regarded for your service to the Empire of Greece, and the King of France: For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thousand Marks in Gold. Lady, I thank your Bounty, and will attend you during Life. Then said *Valentine*, Mother, I pray tell me some Tydings of *Clerimond*: Fair Son, *Clerimond* hath been stolen from *Aquitain*, and given to King *Trompart*, that came to the Pagans Aid. *Valentine* hearing this, lookt strangely upon *Pacolet*, thinking that he had deceived him, and would have smitten him, but *Pacolet* entreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stolen my Horse away; but I am revenged on him, by cutting off his Head. *Valentine* understanding these Misfortunes, and that every one was Innocent, grew into bitter Passions for his loss.

Chap. XXXV. How King Pepin took leave of the Emperor at his Departure from Greece, and how Orson went along with him. How Garnier fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused Orson falsely of Treason: And how the Knife was found in the King's Bed. And how Orson claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him: and it was (by the twelve Peers of France) granted. And how Valentine, in seeking Clerimond, arrived at Antioch, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon. And how Valentine after the Conquest of the Dragon causing the King of Antioch, and all his Land to be baptized: and of the lawless Love of the Queen Rozamond. and how the King of Antioch was put to Death for Renouncing his Mahometry, by King Brandiffer, his Wifes Father. and how the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners by Bandiffer.

THESE Wars thus ended, K. Pepin took leave of the Emperor, and returned into France. Orson would needs go along with his Uncle Pepin, and spend the Remainder of his Days in his Service. The King was content, and said unto him, I will make you high Constable of France, moreover, if it so chance that my Young Son Charles should Decease before me, I will make you K. of France, I thank you gracious Uncle, and you shall find me faithful: and a long with me will I bear the Lady Fezon: The Day of taking leave came, and each embraced other with kisses and Tears: But *Valentine* could not rest, for he had lost his Love, wherefore I am resolved to seek my love, for whom I endangered my Life, and by my Sword I won her: Her I bewail, and her will I Recover again, if she be alive: But if I find not, short and woeful will be my Days: And so he called *Pacolet* to him, and said, Wilt thou serve me, and be my Companion in this unknown Task? Sir quoth he, willingly; and am Ready whenever you shall set forward. Then *Valentine* made all things in a Readiness for his departure; and now hath taken Sea, and left his Country; only Accompanied with three Attendance. Now we leave him, and speak of

King *Pepin*, who by this time is seated in *Parris*, and was honourably Received: But above all, the valiant *Orson* was highly esteemed, insomuch, that he had even all the Command of the Kingdom delivered unto him. if ought was brought before the King, *Orson* was the Man to be sued unto.

this Greatness of *Orson* fretted *Haufray* and *Henry* (of whom you have heard before) to the Heart, insomuch that they plotted means how to take away his Life, saying, it was much to their Indignity, that *Orson* should be thus preferred before them, being Sons unto the King: Surely, says the one to the other, his Glory cannot long endure, for his own Pride will be his overthrow. Ay, but (said *Haufray*) understand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our Elder Sister, to wit, *Florent* and *Garnier*, these are both hardy and fierce, and by them methinks some Plot might be set on foot again, they are fit Members to Execute any Villany, for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Usher unto his private Chamber: Now either of these may enter into the King's Chamber, and Murder him in his Bed, and such a deed being done, it will surely be laid to *Orson's* charge, for he only hath the Guard of his Person. if this can be effected, *Orson* will surely be Codemned to Death, and the Realm wholly light into our Hands.

upon this Resolution, they sent for these two Instruments of Murder, to acquaint them with the Treason, and being come, *Haufray* said unto them: Sirs, I and my Brother have laid a Plot to do us good, and Raise you to Honour; which thing we chuse rather to offer unto you, for that you are Allied unto us, and therefore we Respect you before others. Thus it is you know our Father the King never loved us, but hath ever advanced strangers, and left us slightly Regarded: These things considered, my Brother, I, and you two Brothers; descended from our Uncle, determines to put our doting Father to Death, and so we may shear the Land into our own Government, This thing by us first plotted, were fitted to be executed by one of you, and I think you, *Garnier*, to be the fittest for it, because you being Usher in the King's Chamber, you may convey Your self behind some Arras, and when the King is in bed Murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King is slain, the Fact will be laid upon *Orson*, for he only hath the charge of his Body, and so we shall quickly get him Adjudged to Death; and as for little *Charles*, we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle (said *Garnier*) doubt not but that I shall undertake this Enterprize, Shortly after, *Garnier* on a Night when the King was at Supper, got a Knife, and secretly entered into the King's Chamber, and hid himself behind the Hangings. When the Hour of the King's going to bed came, he was attended by his Guard, and Chamberlain, as the manner was. The K.

be-

being said, every Man departed, save only *Orson*, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep: *Orson* seeing the King asleep, laid himself down upon a Pallet by him.

The dead time of the Night was come, wherein *Garnier* assayed (having the Knife Ready) this bloody Enterprife: But being come to the Bed-side, Ready to lift up his Arm to strike the fatal stroak, he thought the K. would awaken, and so trembling for fear, laid him down by the Bed-side, and durst not stir: Anon he would adventure again, but being (as before) possessed with fear, he put the Knife within the Bed, and then he Returned to the place from whence he came. *Orson* all the while slept soundly, mis-doubting nothing but yet was troubled with a frightful Dream, which was, that one would have robbed his Wife of Honour: Also he thought, that beside a River, he saw two Herons Fight with a Hawk, but the Hawk defended herself so valiantly, that he had slain the two Herons, had they not been assisted by a multitude of little Birds, and the Herons likewise had slain the Hawk, but that an Eagle Rescued him.

At this Dream *Orson* awaked, and was much astonished thereat, saying, the Gods preserve my Brother *Valentina* from Treason. By this time, the Day broak, and *Orson* softly stole out of the Chamber, fearing to awaken the King. when *Garnier* saw *Orson* gone, he also followed soon after, and took his way towards the Chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longed to hear the News: *Garnier*, quoth they, tell us what is done: Lords (said *Garnier*) I would not do the like again for all the Gold in *France*, and yet I have not hurt the King, for still as I was a lifting up my Hand to strike, fear and horror did so affright me, that I durst no more adventure. But I have advised me of another Plot, and have on purpose left the Knife in the King's Bed, and this it is, we will Accuse *Orson* of Treason, and tell the King, there are four Traytors, whereof *Orson* is the Principle. Also, they will make away little *Charles*, and so wholly possess the Crown. to prove this, we will say, *Orson* hath conveyed a Knife into the King's Bed, if any demand how we know thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the Door, heard all their conference. *Garnier*, said *Haufray*, you say well, but if *Orson* deny it, you and your Brother shall crave Combat against him, say that by such adventure you come by the worst, my Brother and I shall find Men enough to Rescue you, Thus they resolved, and thus was Treason laid the Second time for *Orson* the innocent. The next Day the King being at Dinner, attended by *Haufray* and *Henry*, who shewed good countenance to *Orson*: When *Garnier* saw his time, he came before the King, saying: Worthy King, your Grace hath bestowed on me many kingly favours wherefore it is my Duty to open unto you a Treason, which lately I chanced to hear, and

to the end you may have a care of your Person, I will bewray unto you the Practicers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay Hands on *Orson* first, for he was the principal Traytor, the Number in all are four; *Orson* was the Man should kill you in your Bed with a Knife; and that your Majesty may the better Credit me, this Day, as they met together I was in a certain Place, and heard *Orson* say, the Knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your bed; now if it please you to go or send, you shall find my words true. Sir (said *Florant*) my Brother speaketh nothing but truth.

The King hearing these words, beheld *Orson* with many strange countenance, and at last said. False and disloyal Man can such a thought enter into thy Breast, as to take away my Life, whom I have more respected than my own Children! Liege, quoth *Orson*, be not so lightly carried away to believe this accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall prove envy the Author of all these Treasons. Speak no more (said the K.) for if the Knife be found in the Bed, I will have no further proof: So calling to his Lords, he said: Lords, I was never so suddenly confounded, as at this present. Sir (said *Myllon Daugler*) I know not what to say, but I cannot beleave that *Orson* is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty: Yea but (said the K.) if we find a Knife in the Bed, it is an evident sign to move me to believe it; I pray let us go make tryal. So the K. went himself into the Chamber, accompanied with many Witnesses, where they found the Knife as *Garnier* said: Alas! (said the K.) in whom may I trust, when my own kinsman seeketh my life, but I vow he shall suffer a shameful death. With that a valient Kt. named *Simon*, came to *Orson*, which loved him well, and said: Alas! Sir, flye and save your life, for the K. has found the Knife in his Bed; and so the K. hath vowed your Death. *Orson* said, I fear nothing. The K. entered the Hall where *Orson* was guarded with fifty one Kts. and so assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgment. *Orson* being brought before the K. and his Lords, he said unto them: Worthy Lords, since my words cannot defend me, I require but the Custom of your Country; which is, that when a Man shall be accused of Murther or Treason, he might crave a Combat against his Enemy. Now I hold my self innocent. which I will maintain, if by your Counsels you grant me that which of right belongeth to me: and further; to clear my self, Lo here is my Gage, if I be overcome, do with my Body as it pleaseth you. *Garnier* said unto *Orson*, I think you had better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reason to answer you in the Field. Ah Traytor! there is nothing yet proved, but that a Man that feareth not damnation, and desireth honour, saith so. Upon these words the twelve Pers of France caused *Orson* to be removed out of the place, and also

also the Brothers his Adversaries, while in the mean space the rest disputed the question. At last it was adjudged, that *Orson's* demand was reasonable, and that he ought to be heard. Then were the Brothers called in again before the King; and Duke *Myllon* demanded of *Garnier*, who were Confederate with him in the King's death: Lords (quoth he) I will not bewray them for all the wealth in France: *Garnier* (quoth he) I give sentence, that you and your Brother take up *Orson's* Gage, and fight with him; for sence you conceal the rest of these Murtherers, it is to be doubted, that there is malice in the Plot. *Orson* at this sentence rejoyced, and cast his Glove down to these two Traytors, saying; Lords, here is my Glove, that I cast down, upon this condition, that if my Case be foul, or by them conquered, I offer my Body to your will and pleasure: Rise then, said the K. for Judgment is past: And for your father security, it were good we had some hostage: With that *Haufray* and *Henry* offered themselves Body for Body, for *Garnier* and his Brother: And for *Orson* stood *Myllon Daugler*, and *Duck Sampson*. So a Months Day was assigned for the Combat.

The time being come that they should fight, Duke *Myllon Daugler*, *Sampson*, *Galeram*, and *Garvaies*, brought forth *Orson*; for he was well beloved: when he was armed, and well mounted he rode throw the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place appointed. Long he hath not been there, but *Haufray* and *Henry* entred the Field with *Garnier* and *Florent*, the two Traytors, who greatly feared *Orson*, but *Haufray* and *Henry* still comforted them, promising them aid: Being thus in a readines, the Bishop of *Paris* went unto them, and gave all three an oath, according to the Law of Arms, then the Bishop departed. After came the Heraulds, and Serjeants of the field, to clear the Place Now *Haufray* had provided 3000 Men hard by, and gave them command, that as soon as they heard him blow his Horn, they should set forwards towards him: This gladed the Traytors at the Heart, but it little availed them, for as soon as the Trumpets signal gave, *Orson* couched his Spear, and puting his Spurs to his Horse, ran upon them with fury, and lent *Garnier* such a stroak, that he ran through both Shield and Armour: *Florent* on the other side, gave *Orson* a Blow, that he thought he had struck against a Tower: False and accursed Traytor (quoth *Orson*) thou hast wrongfully accused me; e'er this Day pass, I shall shew the were Loyalty doth rest: And with these words, he with his Sword smote *Garnier* out of his Saddle, and withal pull'd off his Helm, and had cut off his Head, if his Brother *Florent* had not rescued him.

Again, *Orson* made towards *Garnier*, and striking off his Ear, said: Fair Master, I would be loath you should lose by the bargain. Then began a fresh Combate between these three Champions, *Garnier* having reco-

vered again his Helm, came upon *Orson* with all his force, thinking to have left some mark of that Encounter, But had not his Brother relieved him, he had soon been slain. Thus *Orson* had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout Courage, and besides, they relied much upon the rescue of *Haufray* and *Henry*, but still *Orson* followed, and at last so wounded *Garnier*, that he was fain to forsake his Horse. Being on the Ground, he smote, at *Orson's* Horse insomuch that he Cut off one of his Legs and felled him to the Earth, but *Orson* being light and strong, leapt from of his Back, and took *Garnier* between his Arms so strongly, that he took away his Shield, and threw him on the Earth; but as he would have wounded him in the Belly, *Florent* came upon *Orson*, and gave him such a Strok on the Helm, that he made him stagger; *Orson* vexed hereat, smote him so, that he overthrew his Horse dead to the Earth, and after took of his Helm. *Florant* (said to his Brother) fie not, return, or we shall be vanquished, and herewithal they made a fresh Encounter upon *Orson*, and with their Swords laid on so lustily, that the Stroaks entered his Armour, and drew Blood, *Orson* seeing himself wounded, smote off one of *Florant's* Arms; but yet he gave not over. *Orson* espying him making a Blow at him, made as if he would have struck at *Garnier*; but suddenly withdrawing his Arm, hit *Florent* in such wise, that he fell down dead to the Earth. and after said unto *Garnier*, Traytor, thou shalt after except thou confess the Treason. Not so, *Orson*, for I will be revenged on thee for my Brothers Death: *Haufray* and *Henry* disliked the Match, and said, one of our Nephews is slain, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confess the Treason, and thereby bring us in danger. Brother (said *Haufray*) I will tell you what may be done, as soon as we perceive *Garnier* to be overcome, before he confess any thing, we will enter into the Field, and so the Treason shall not be known. Quoth *Henry* be it so. Now are both the Champions at it in the Field. *Garnier* (said *Orson*) you see you cannot escape my Hands, therefore confess the Treason, and I will save your Life. Boy (quoth *Garnier*) thy fair promises are little worth, for seeing I have lost an Ear, I little respect any place of Honour; so rather chusing to die valiantly, or Conquer thee, I set down my rest, that here I will finish my Fortunes, either to conquer or be conquered. Agreed (quoth *Orson*) and sith Death is so welcome to thee, defend thy self, for this shall be the longest Day of thy Life: And thus he makes at *Garnier*, and by strength of Arms threw him under him, and pulled off his Helm, *Haufray* seeing there was no way but one, cryed out, *Orson* slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, and we will do such justice upon him, as to so foul an Act appertaineth: and *Haufray* said unto *Garnier*, Nephew, confess the Fact, and we will be a means un-

to the King for your pardon. Lord said *Garnier*, I did put the Knife into the King's bed; in speaking these words, *Haufray* drew out his Sword and run him thorow; and after said, Lords, let this Traytor be hanged on the Gallows, as he hath well deserved: But Cousin *Orson* I am glad of your Victory, for it proveth you Innocent: And though *Garnier* were my Nephew, yet I will never acknowledge him of my Blood. News coming to the Lady *Fezon*, she was glad of *Orson's* Victory; King *Pepin* also came, saying, Nephew, you have indured dangerous wounds. Uncle, quoth *Orson*, the Traytors are vanquished, and *Haufray* made *Garnier* confess the Treason, and so killed him. Nephew, be ware of that *Haufray*, for he hath surely a Hand in it, but for this time I will hold my Peace. The King and Barons returned into the City of *Paris*, and made great Joy for the Victory: *Haufray* and *Henry* speak well of him, but in their Hearts they imagined mischief, which after came to light, and they had their desert, where we leave them, and return to *Valentine* who rood from place to Place to find out *Clerimond*. *Valentine*, having travelled long, at last arrived in the City of *Antioch*, thinking to find out *Clerimond*. *Pacolet* being with him, could speak their language, and took up their Lodging in a great Man's House, but the host of the House was somewhat doubtful, and when they were in the Chamber, he would harken, insomuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of *Antioch*, and said: Sir, there are four Christians in my House, that have entered your Land without paying Tribute. The King said, thou hast well done, let them be brought before me; so being sent for, he said unto *Valentine*: Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must take choice of, or else suffer death. What is it (quoth *Valentine*) for I will do any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath devoured many Men: she is bigger then a Horse, winged like a Foul, feathered like a Griffen, the Head of a Serpent, a great Sting within her Mouth, a fierce look, the Skin covered with red scales, and she hath the Feet of a Lyon. (quoth *Valentine*) This is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my Fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you well then change your *Mahometry*, and become Christian: The King bound it with an Oath that he would, for there were never any returned alive that attempted it. Then *Valentine* caused a Shield to be made, and thereon fastned a great number of long Spikes of steel, a Foot long, as sharp as Needles.

This Shield being made, *Valentine* put on Armor, and buckling on his Helm, girded his Sword to his side, took leave of his Man, and mounting his Horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, everyone got up into their Windows

Windows to behold the Fight. Now they of the City were fain to provide for the Dragon, either the Carcass of a Man or of a Beast, which if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City : but having eaten her prey, she returned to her Den again, without doing any harm. All such Malafactors as any way had deserved death; where continually thrown unto this fearful Monster ; but if they had no Malafactors, then they went to the Sea-side for to take up Christians, and they were brought to be devoured by the Dragon.

Now by this time is *Valentine* within the sight of the Dragon, she seeing one come towards her, closed her wings most fiercely, casting out of her mouth fire like fire. Then descended from his Horse, and left his sharp Ax at his Saddle Bow, and went towards the Serpent, thinking to have



smitten her, but she lifted up her Paw to smite *Valentine*, who subtilly watching his opportunity, lifted up his Shield (armed as you have heard with spikes) and so the Serpent broached her Foot upon them, who feeling herself hurt, she cryed out most horribly, drawing back, *Valentine* persued, but when the Serpent see him approach, she rose upon her Feet, but that much fearing the Shield, she ran Back. The King beholding this, said, see yonder is a most valiant Knight, whom we ought to reverence for his hardiness. Also, the fair Queen *Rozamond* fell in love with *Valentine*, to see him so adventurous. Now grew the Battle Fierce and Dangerous between *Valentine* and

and the Dragon, but still she fearing the pricks of the Shield, by which he held her in Play, in the one Hand he bare his Shield, and in the other his Sword, wherewith he gave the Serpent a marvellous Blow under the Ear, but with the Blow he broke his Sword. *Valentine* was in great Danger when his Sword was broken, for the Beast grew so angry, that with her Paw she rent his Armour quite through. *Valentine* still pursuing her, and drew forth a Knife, and struck it into her Throat, but she little regarded it: *Valentine* seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Ax at his Saddle Bow, and returning unto her, subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the Serpent such a Blow with his Ax: that he cut off most part of her Tail, whereat she roared most Hideously. After this she flew at *Valentine's* Head, and pulling off his Helm, smote him to the Ground, but he quickly getting up, was half amazed at his Head being uncovered: *Pacolet* perceiving his Master in distress, got into the City, and put himself in Arms, got another Helm, and bare it to his Master; *Valentine* perceiving him, said: Friend, I am well nigh Spent, go thy Ways and commend me to my Friends, for if thou stay here thou must dye with me. But for all this, *Pacolet* came to *Valentine*, and delivered the Helm: the Serpent seeing that, came to *Pacolet* and taking him by the right Leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a push with her Paw, that he felt it through his Armor, and had slain him, had not *Valentine* with his Ax cut off her Nose, and put out one of her Eyes: these hurts made the Beast mad, and opening her Wing, she flew to the Top of a high Rock: Then went *Valentine* to his Helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the Beast came flying down, and he was fain to cover his Head with his Shield, which the Dragon espying, returned again to the Rock. Then *Pacolet* put on *Valentine's* Helm, and said: Sir, I am sore wounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some Relief, for my Health faileth: As soon as the Dragon saw him a great Way off, she assailed *Valentine*, and flying directly at his Head, thought to have laid hold thereon but *Valentine* threw his Ax so Right, that he cut off one of her Wings, whereby she could not fly. The Dragon being down, *Valentine* quickly smote off the other Wing; so that the Battle was most Violent between them, insomuch that he was not able to lift up his Arm any longer to wield his Ax; but leaving all, he got up into a Tree, to rest his wearied Limbs, and the Beast not able any more to fly, beheld him with a cruel Countenance, casting out of her Mouth nothing but stinking Vapours. *Valentine* being well refreshed, came down, and went towards the Dragon, that ran so fiercely at him: *Valentine* still put the Shield before him, and with his Ax cut her left Thigh, wherewithal she fell to the Earth. *Valentine* still pursues his Stroaks, and ran his Ax so far in her Throat, that she fell

down Dead. *Valentine* having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called unto him, and said; Of all Kts. thou art the most Hardy, for by thy Valour is our City delivered of a fearful Enemy, that hath much damaged us. With these words they entered the City, and so to the Place where a solemn Feast was held. Then the King caused *Valentine's* Wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamored on him so hotly, that for to gain his Love, she would have wrought the Death of the King her Husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his Wounds within the City of *Antioch*, he said unto the King: Sir, you remember your Promise, that you and your People would receive Baptism, if I overcome the Dragon; you see he is slain by me only. True (quoth the King) and look what I promised, I will perform: And thereupon sent his present Edict throughout the Land, That every one should forsake his *Mahomet*, and be Baptized. The Queen sent for *Valentine* to her Chamber, who presently went to her, and said, Lady, I am come at your Command, and ready to do you Service. Ah! said the Lady, thou art of great Hardiness, Wisdom, Strength and all Valour belonging to a Famous Warriour, happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy Love: O! that I were not a Woman, or a Woman not under Subjection: O I could love thee beyond human Reason, had'st thou but so much Liberty as to Embrace me, or to grant me Love. Lady I thank you, but you have Wedded a Pissant King, and him only ought you to Love and Honour. Knight, 'tis true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I first beheld thee, all my thoughts were captivated. *Valentine* seeing the Queen so eager, replied, Lady, if the King should but know or Suspect me, I should surely be put to Death. Again, he is old, you are young, rest your self content till I return from my intended Journey, to the Holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be Dead, I willingly give my self unto you. Hereupon she played the Part of many Women that are weary of their Husbands, for the Love of others: Even so began this Queen to Practice: for one Night, as the Queen was going to bed, a Cup of Wine was brought unto her, as the Custom was, wherein she had conveyed Poyson, and after presented it unto the King: But he having some doubt thereof, disliked it, saying, Lady, look what Dring you have brewed, either Drink it your self, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity, knew not what to say, but falling on her Knees, craved Pardon, and said that *Valentine* procured her to do it. I do beleave thee, quoth the King, and Pardon thee; so they lay together that Night, but she still requested, that *Valentine* might be put to Death: He shall as sure as I live, quoth the King, She hearing the King say so, was very Sorrowful, and secretly calling to one of her

her Maidens, sent to *Valentine*, to tell him her Will, and what the King had decreed against him: *Valentine* hearing of this Accusation, whereof he was innocent. said; What will not a Woman undertake? Now for the Love of the Queen must I depart like a Traytor, or else lay her shame open to the World; well, I will rather depart with Dishonour to my self than her. And therewithal calling up his Attendants, before the Morning, he departed the City, and came to the Sea-side, where lay a Ship full of Passengers ready to put off, in amongst the rest goes he and his Company; so hoisting Sails they departed. On the Morrow when the King was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them, Lords, I am most deceived in the Man whom I most trusted, and he whom in Heart I held dearest hath betrayed me, *Valentine* I mean, who for to gain the lawless Love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to poyson me; therefore let us proceed to Judge him some shameful Death.

Amongst the rest an aged wise Baron said, We have no reason to proceed against an Offender, without calling him to answer. Again, where he never so great an Offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon *Valentine* was sent for, but instead of *Valentine* came his Host, who told them *Valentine* was gone before break of Day from his House, but whither he knew not. The King hearing this sent forth Men to follow and persue him; but all in vain, for he was past their reach on the Sea. Shortly after that the King of *Antioch* was converted, his Wives Father *Brandiffer*, a Turk, had so great a spleen against the King for altering his Religion, that he sent to him for his Daughter *Rozamond*. When the King heard this unjust demand, he gain-said him; hereupon *Brandiffer* came upon him with 100000 Pagans, and besieged his City. At last, within the Compass of four Months, by Treason he obtain'd it, took the King Prisoner, and suddenly put him to Death, and Crowned himself King of *Antioch*. This done, he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempest he was forced into the Land of *Greece*, into a little City called *Cretophe*.

Within this City by chance was the Emperor of *Greece* newly arrived then, and he and the *Green Knight*, with some other company rid forth to sport themselves, not knowing of the Pagons being there, fell into the Hands of *Brandiffers* Souldiers, and having gotten them, hasted towards the Gates of the City, thinking to have siezed the whole City, but they found it manfully defended. The men of *Cretophe* were very sorrowful for the loss of the Emperor and the *Green Kt*. At last they determined to send Letters unto *Bellisant* of what had happened, and to pemand aid of against these Pagans. The Lady receiving these Letters, was wondrous sad, and sending for their Captains, and Men of War, made preparation for a speedy Revenge. Also she

sent for her Son *Orson*, and craved aid of her Brother *K. Pepin*: but *Brandiffer* had scouts abroad to give him notice of all that happened, and fearing the Force of the *Greeks*, and their Prisoners loss, they stole to the Sea-side; so taking Ship, they in a short Time arrived in *Lize*, in which Place they took a Castle, wherein was kept his two Daughters, *Rozamond* and *Galazy*, who for her beauty had been demanded of Fourteen Kings: *Brandiffer* had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore he caused her to be kept within this Castle, for it was the strongest in the Land; for it had a Bridge made by such cunning Art, that but one could pass at a Time: At the End of this Bridge two fierce Lions stood to keep the entry into this Castle: The Lady *Galazy* was kept in a Dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperor and the *Green Kt.* with other Christians, which had been there a long Time, were put. Where leave we them, and we shall shew you somewhat of the Lady *Clerimond*, which still remained in *Indie*.

Chap. XXXVI. *How Clerimond after the year was past, feigned herself mad, because she would not VVed the King of Indie: And of Lucar that would revenge the Death of his Father King Trompart, upon the King of Indie: How King Lucar in the City of Elclariana wedded Rozamond, the fair Daughter of Brandiffer: How Valentine departed from Etclardy, to breath out Despaunce: of the Answer he brought from the Indian King: How Rozamond found a way to be taken, and led unto the Indian King: How King Lucar caused Brandiffer to stay with him, and sent Valentine into Angory against King Pepin: How King Pepin took the City of Angory.*

YOU have heard already of the Death of *K. Trompart*, who stole away the Lady *Clerimond* upon *Pacolet's* Horse: Also how she got Pardon for one whole Year before she would Marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appeareth no Succour for her Relief, which she had so long expected, therefore (poor Lady) now is she put to her Shifts, and to save her Maiden-head, she feigned herself very Sick. This News coming to the King's Ear, that the fair *Clerimond* was extream Sick, at which he grew very sad, and came to visit her, at last he would have put his Hand about her Head, to have held it, but she refusing, took his Arm away, and lift up her Head herself, making Signs that she would Bite him, at which Action he wondred, and grew much astonished thereat. After this she rowled her Eyes up and down, and made grievous Faces in such wise, that the King got him out of the Chamber, fearing least she should prove Mad. In this manner she abode a long Time, and she did act the matter so well, that within fifteen days she seemed more like a Beast than a Woman: She made all her Attendants forsake her, for if she caught them she would leave some mark behind her; so they left her alone, giving her meat at the Window, for none would come near her. One while she put her Smock upermost, anon she bedawbed her Face with Soot,

Soot, and in this estate the King came and beheld her, lamenting her distemper, and said unto her; Lady, now is the Time come that I should have had you to Wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well, made shew as if she would beat him, but then she fell into a strange fit of madness: One while she would run against the Chimney another while fall into a great Laughter, then sit down and make Faces, and all to preserve her Chastity. Many ways was tryed for her recovery, yet none prevailed: So leave we her in her Chamber, and return to *Valentine*, who with an ardent desire is roved abroad, accompanied with *Pacolet*, to find out the Lady *Clerimond*, and now were they arrived in *Esclardy*, which was the Kingdom of *Trompart*, who carried away the Lady on *Pacolet's* Horse. Being in the City they asked for King *Trompart*, so they told him he was Slain by the King of *Indie*, and that now at this present, *Lucar* his Son would revenge his Death upon the King of *Indie*, and to that end he hath newly mustered up his Powers, and waged many Royal Kings to undertake this War. Then spake *Pacolet*, who well understood the Language, saying. Of what account is this King *Lucar*? For the Host where he lay told him, that he should shortly Marry with the Daughter of *Brandiffer*, that was late Wife to the King of *Antioch*, who was Slain by *Brandiffer*, for that he forsook his Religion.

At this Tale *Valentine* was much abashed, and wondred at this sudden alteration, but at last he said; what is become of the Lady that King *Trompart* did bring with him? Of her we hear no Tydings (quoth the Host) tell me then where is King *Lucar* at this present, I would fain serve under him for Wages, for my Mony is fallen short, and I have a great Desire to follow the Wars. Marry, said the Host, King *Lucar* is in *Esclardy*, and there ye shall find him accompanied with a huge Host, attending *Brandiffer* to receive his Daughter in Wedlock. *Valentine* knowing all this, he hoped to hear of *Clerimond*, and so he departed, and came to *Esclardy* to serve King *Lucar*.

Lucar being in the City of *Esclardy*, thither came *Brandiffer* with his Daughter, at sight of whom K. *Lucar* was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all other she could never affect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married unto K. *Lucar*. *Valentine* was abroad, and entering a Wood, he heard the crying voice of a Woman, whom a Sarazen would have ravished: *Valentine* still heard the cry, and said unto *Pacolet*, Ride faster, for this cry is more and more in my Ear, and we shall do a Charitable Deed, in relieving the oppressed. Sir said *Pacolet*, meddle not in this matter, for you know not what Danger you may be drawn into. *Pacolet*, thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the Name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of Necessity: so he Rode up and down the Wood, till at last he lighted

on a Sarazen, that had gotten a Lady under him. Then *Valentine* said : My Friend, forsake your Lady, and betake you to your Arms to Combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not. By *Mahomet* (quoth the Pagan) I accept thy challenge, and well make thee know, that in an evil Hour thou comest hither. These words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his Horse, and then he took his Shield and Spear, and being prepared, they set out one at the other so fiercely, that *Valentine* ran his Spear quite through the Body of the Pagan, insomuch as he fell down Dead. Then went *Valentine* to the Maiden, saying : Damosel, now is your Enemy laid in the Dust, but I pray shew me the cause why this Man brought you in to this Wood : Sir, I will tell nothing save the truth ; yester-night late he came to my Father's House to lodge, and there attempting the use of my Body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the Chamber of my Father, and there slew him. Afterwards he thought he should surely have got his will of me in this manner as you see, from which by your Manhood I am freed, and mine Honour saved ; do with me what pleaseth you, for your Body hath Ransomed mine ; and besides, as you have won me, I yield me to you pleasure. Damsel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong, return unto your House, and keep well your Chastity. So *Valentine* left the Maiden, and took his way towards *Esclardy*.

This slain Pagan had certain Attendants, which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they found him Dead, they told his misfortune to the King, saying : Our Master (and your Marshal) is slain in the Wood. The King was hereat right heavy, and presently sent out a Search, to see if they could find the Murtherer. At last *Valentine* and his Company was taken bound and beaten by the King's Command. Now in this Castle was *Rosamond*, who knew *Valentine*, and was very sorrowful for him, and anon she went unto the King and said : Alas Sir ! do this Kt. no harm, for I vow, he is the valiantest Kt. breathing, he is called *Valentine of France*, that slew the Mighty Dragon of *Antioch* ; make much of him, and retain him into your Service, for his Fellow lives not in the World. Lady (said the King) divers times have I heard talk of his prowess, and I have much desired to have a sight of him : Then he called *Valentine* to him, and said : Kt. fear not Death, But know, that above all Men, I love and hold you dear, you and all yours I receive into my pay : Yet one thing still remaineth, that you must do for me ; Go into *Indie*, and defie the King thereof in my Name, telling him : That I am ready prepared to avenge the Death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to Death, except he come presently before me, with a Cord about his Neck, ready to receive the Sentance as by me, and my Barrons shall be imposed on him : If he deny it, tell him, I will shortly visit him and his Land with War, and

not leave one Town or Village unransaked ; nor spare the life of any. Sir (said *Valentine*) all this I shall gladly do, altho' I know it to be dangerous.

Then Q. *Rosamond* seeing *Valentine* ready to depart, entered into her Chamber, and by one of her Damsels, sent for him ; and she said to him : Kt. you are welcome. for I had a great desire to see you. So had I Lady (quoth *Valentine*) as great a desire to see you : For since I saw you, I understand your Husband is Dead, and that you are married again. Lady you know that for the Love of you (within *Antioch*) I sustained much danger of life : 'Tis true (said the Lady) and I acknowledge my self guilty ; but now hath my Father bestowed me on K. *Lucar*, who is Rich above measure, yet can I not fancy him ; he is a Perfidious Traytor, and since you entered this Palace, he grew so Jealous of you, that he sends you into *Indie*, trusting you never shall return again, for never yet came any back : But I will circumvent him, and set you free from Danger : Therefore know this, that not long ago, the King of *Indie*, requested me for his Wife ; and the truth is, I loved him better than this Traytor, but my Father crossed me in it : Now this K. of *Indie*, in token of love, sent me a Ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not shewed to any save your self ; but seeing I perceive his malice towards you. I will give you that which shall defend you from danger, and make you return a victorious Knight ; and tho' I am assured you have no need of my Love, in that you have promised it to a nother Lady, yet I cannot forget, my Heart, which for your love lies in thrall'd. Therefore when you come before the King of *Indie*, after reverence made, and salutations from King *Lucar*, next greet him from me, as my Love and secret Friend, and tell him, tho' my Father hath given me to King *Lucar*, yet his love cannot once slip out of my Breast, but still hath assurance, and full hope one Day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished Pleasures ; tell him also, that when King *Lucar* bringeth his Host, I will come with him ; and then if there be any valour in him, he may carry me away whither he will. Now to the end he shall not find your Words to be in vain, bear him this Ring. Lady (quoth *Valentine*) for your care, love, and good will towards me, I humbly thank you, and have no doubt, but that I shall deliver your message so effectually to the K. of *Indie*, that you shall shortly receive Answer thereof. So taking his leave, he went to K. *Lucar*, who allowed him ten Marriners to conduct him over an Arm of the Sea, that lyeth between *Esclardy* and *Indie* ; so that having a prosperous wind the next Morning they arrived at a Port two Miles from the Palace of the K. of *Indie*. Then *Valentine* being arrived, he drew forth his Horse out of the Ship, and backed him ; and said unto the Marriners, abide here till my return, for it shall not be long e'er I be dispatched. One of the Marriners said unto the rest ; if he return, the Devil

must

must bring him, for of fifty Messengers, not one returned again: *Valentine* over-heard this muttering Speech, but made no Answer: So he took his way to the City, and when he was near the Palace, he alighted off his Horse, and went to the King, who was in his Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three Kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled Brow, and thought he was a Messenger of King *Lucar's*, and said aloud to him: Art thou not a Servant of King *Lucar's*? Sir (said *Valentine*) I am, and bring you tydings that will fret your Heart; but on the other side, I bring such gladsome news, from the fair *Rozamond*, that your very Soul will leap to hear it: Messenger, know this that in the spite of K. *Lucar* thou shouldst have suffered Death, but for the Love and Reverence I owe to that Lady, thou shalt receive no injury, if so be, that thou canst shew me some token from her. Yes (said *Valentine*) that I shall shew, and deliver my Message so, that I will not swerve from the truth thereof. That I belong to K. *Lucar*, you know, who by me sendeth these Words; That for the Death of his Father, You must come and yield to his Mercy, with a Rope about your Neck, as a Man Guilty of so foul a Deed, to receive Sentence of Death, according to your Desert; if you refuse it (as a Messenger) I breath Defiance against you, and tell you he will shortly come, and lay wast your Land, and ransack your Dominions: Messenger, I understand thee, and set light by these his bold Threats: and for answer to this matter, thou shalt have Letters, wherein shall be explained how little we regard his Menaces, and also how ready I am to receive his Forces that shall come to whip my Land: Therefore leave you these proud brags, and return to that thou hast to say concerning the fair Lady *Rozamond*, for I most of all desire to hear from her: Sir (said *Valentine*) on her behalf I salute you as her Love, and she sendeth you word that she is against her will married to King *Lucar*, whom she never loved. Again, the poor Lady is so burthened with love towards you, that if she might have her Will, you should soon perceive, that none should enjoy her but your self; for she told me that she will come hither, in the company of the King her Husband, when he taketh up Arms to invade you; and then may you find other means to accomplish your Desire: By *Mahomet* (said the *Indian King*) this pleaseth me extreamly: Sir (said *Valentine*) whether these come from a true Heart or no, I cannot tell; but for token that all is true that I have said, receive here a Ring which you gave unto her, and though Women do prove Variable, yet methinks she Speaks of you from her inward Breast: Friend (quoth he) this is the same Ring indeed, and my Heart is overcome with Joy, go thy ways in, and take thy repast, while, in the mean Time, I get the Letters ready, thou shalt take with thee to answer this defiance. *Valentine* went in as the King commanded, and was highly feasted, and

and he still demanded after *Clerimond*, but could not hear of her. By this Time came the King, and delivered unto him the Letters, and *Valentine* taking his leave of him, knew not that his Love was in the Court, who abode many evil Days for the Love of him, and still desired to hear some News of him. in the End he shall find her, but he must suffer many Tribulations, and hard Atchievements. *Valentine* made great hast to be freed out of *Indie*, and taking Horse, he came to the Haven where the Marriners staid; at his coming they were amazed, and thought that he had not done his Message: Masters (quoth *Valentine*) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my Message, and I am safely returned. Then the Marriners said, we much Marvel thereat. At these Words he took Ship, and on the Morrow they were in *Esclardy*. *Valentine* made no stay, but as soon as he had descended his Horse, he went to the Palace of the King, finding him there accompanied with King *Brandiffer*, and Fourteen other Kings that were come to the Succour of King *Lucar*, against the *Indian King*: At the return of *Valentine* they wondered, for the King sent him on Purpose never to return, wherefore he made *Valentine* come before them all, to tell what Tydings of his Message. *Valentine* began thus to say, He regards not all your threats a Straw: he is Fierce and Proud, and says if you have a Mind to come to him, he hath a greater Desire to receive you, than you have to come; and that you may know that I deliver nothing save the Truth, here is a Letter sealed with his own Hand, in which you shall understand his Mind more at large. This Letter being broke open, they found *Valentine's* Words to be true. King *Brandiffer* understanding this Answer, Swore by all the Gods, that he would never return Home again but with Victory, or loss of Life.

The next Morrow they betook them to the Seas, with and Host of 200000 Sarazens. So the King carried *Rozamond* along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their Tents in a pleasant Field before the City, whilst they of the City made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their order, so by the River side he might espy their Rich Pavillions, Gallantly furnished with Arms, and Streamers; then the King called unto him certain Heralds of Arms, to know by those Arms, whose Tents they were. They first (quoth they) is *Brandiffers*, the Second is *Lucars*, and the Third is *Rozamonds* with her Ladys, when the King did understand that *Rozamond* was there, his Heart leapt for Joy, and said, it is no Time to Sleep now, he that will have the love of a fair Lady, must venture Life and Goods, or else he is not worthy of her that will take no Pains. Hereupon resolving, he presently put his Men in Battle array, and suddenly issued out of the City upon his Enemies, so that they were not in a Readiness, for they little thought the *Indian* had been

so Fierce ; but Love made him to do it. When the King saw *Brandiffer* ordering his Men in Battle Array, he left his Companions, and with much diligence rode towards the Pavilions of the Ladies : When *Rosamond* beheld it was he, she gave all the Rest of her Company the Slip, and ran violently into his Arms, who joyfully received her. The *Indian* perceiving her goodwill, got her up behind him, and putting Spurs to his Horse, she said, My love is fixed only on you, and for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated Man so much as I did King *Lucar*, but now I pray thee, let me bid him farewell, and I will keep my self only to thee so long as I live. Lady quoth the *Indian*, doubt not, for I will not sale you, and here I vow, e'er three Days pass, you shall be Queen of *Indie*, and Mistres of all my Lands. These words passed as he was riding away with the Lady *Rosamond*. At last the Guard of the Maidens came out of the Pavillion, and ran to the King, saying, My Lord there is evil Tydings, for this Day you have lost the Lady *Rosamond*, for the King of *Indie*, your utter Enemy, hath stolen her hence, and is rid away with her, wherefore quickly send your Men of War and follow him, that they may save the Honour of the Queen. Hold your peace, said *Lucar*, and talk no more, for he that hath got an evil Wife, it is well if he can be rid of her, altho' he had a heavy Heart. After this he went to K. *Brandiffer* and said, Sir, I have small joy of your Daughter, who hath left me to run away with a Stranger, and one that is my Enemy, leaving me in reproach and shame. Faith Son (said *Brandiffer*) be not discontent at me, for to Day I will be revenged on him that caryed her away, so putting Spurs to his Horse, rid after him, gathering a great Company of Men. Amongst the rest *Valentine* was one willing to shew his Fidelity, who said unto *Pacole* now shew me by thy Art somewhat. Then *Pacole* raised such a Charm, which so astonished the *Indian's* Eye-sight, that it seemed to him there was nothing before his Horse but Woods, Bushes and great Rivers. At this he was amazed, that he made the Lady alight ; when the Queen was on the Ground, she thought she should have had means to save her life with the King, but *Valentine* was so near to her, that he said unto her ; Lady, abide for you must go with me, for that you have a long time promised me your love. Ah *Valentine*, I owe you but little love, for once I made love unto you, and you refused me, wherefore I was forced to seek another, but seeing I am crossed thus, I yield my self as your Vassel, so you will make my Peace with *Lucar*.

Lady (said *Valentine*) I will do my endeavour ; so he led her to K. *Lucar*, and said unto him ; Sir, here is the Lady *Rosamond* your Wife, whom the *Indian* Traytor had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowful. Sir (quoth the Lady, he telleth you true, for fore-ever as the Bat-

tel was began, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons, that had come to Succour me, and without any further enquiry mounted on his Horse: Being on Horse-back, I perceived that then I was betrayed, so I struggled and pulled him by the Hair, and scratched him by the Face, and forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good Kt. escaped. Lady (said *Lucar*) you have well done: So he left the Lady, and returned to the Battle. They of *Indie* returned into the City, who had lost divers valiant Leaders, but nothing so fretted the *Indian* at the Heart, as did the loss of *Rozamond*. Alas Lady (said he) I have failed thee in thy greatest extremity, but I was surely enchanted, and on the sudden methought I saw Woods, Fields, and Rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the Ground, but all was plain and even way before me: *Valentine* had great praise for getting again the Lady, and she shewed him a fair Countenance, in that he had succoured her; but it was all feigned, for she hated him to Death, and putting up this mischance, she watched her time, and in the end accomplished her desire, and brought her will to Execution; for some four Hours after, she rode forth pretending to take the Air, but took her way towards the K. of *Indie*, and had given him Intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and Seize her as his Prisoner, and carry her away. The King did according to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her Horse by the Head, and led her into the City. Hereupon began a Cry throughout the Host of King *Lucar*, that *Rozamond* was surprized, and she was past recovery. This grieved *Lucar* at the Heart, and gave out that whosoever would recover her out of his Hands, should be made a great Seneschal: Sir (said *Pacolet*) if you please to atchive dignity, I will so work, that we will fetch her back? Nay, said *Valentine*, let her go, Once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her Husband, but all was in vain. The same Day that the King had her he lay with her, and begat a Son called *Rabestre*, who afterward had the Possession of *Jerusalem*. *Lucar* was right sorrowful for the loss of his Wife, but *Brandiffer* his Father recomforted him, saying, Son take Courage, and let us now be revenged before we depart, but it fell out otherwise, for that Day came a Messenger to him, who brought him contrary Tydings, which was that King *Pepin* of *France*, and the Emperor of *Greece*, was entered his land, burning and spoiling many places, and were now upon the Siege of *Angory*, in which City his Lady now lay in Child-Bed: Therefore you must presently take a Course to restrain the fury of the Enemy, or else indure such wracks as were lamentable to behold.

Brandiffer hereat amazed, went unto his Son *Lucar*, and said, Son, here is evil Tydings befallen, the *French* are entered my Land, wasting

and destroying all Things, therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own; but let me tell you what you shall do; send some Kt. unto the *Indian*, to demand your Wife, upon this Condition, that you will first forget the Death of your Father, and that you will raise your Siege, and be gone. Wherefore he sent *Valentine* unto the K. of *Indie*, to declare this Message. He being come before him; said, Great K. I am come from King *Lucar*, who says, that if you will restore his Wife back again, he will forget his Fathers Death, and will raise his Siege, and be gone. To whom the *Indian* thus replied: If he will have a Wife he must go seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her: *Valentine* having thus received this Answer, he departed and came to King *Lucar*, telling him all that the *Indian* had said, which grieved him to the very Heart.

Lucar having by this means caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, sent *Valentine* and *Murgalant* to raise the Siege, which King *Pepin* had laid against *Angory*. And as they were under Sail, *Valentine* espying a Glistering, asked what it might be. Then the Marriners described the Manner and Fashion of it to him. Now were they come within the Sight of King *Pepin's* Tents, and *Murgalant* having viewed the Christians Forces, found the Number to be great: Then said *Valentine*, let us secretly send to the City, to acquaint them with our coming, that to morrow Morning they may issue out at that Side, and we will Back them on this Side, that none may escape our Hands: *Pacolet* standing by, said, Let me be the Messenger, for I can Speak their Language. Quoth *Murgalant* go thy Way: So *Pacolet* departed, but (he said to himself) by to morrow Night you will sing another Song. *Pacolet* being come to the very Gates of the City of *Angory*, the Warder said, Whither goes this Fellow? He looks as if he were some Spy; 'tis true (quoth *Pacolet*) but I am not for your Hurt, therefore bring me into the Host of King *Pepin*, that I may Speak with my Lord *Orson*; for I have a Matter of great Import to acquaint him with. So they brought him into the Presence of *Orson*, who espying him, was right Joyful, and said: How fares my Brother *Valentine*? Then *Pacolet* told him of all his adventures that he had passed since they saw one another; and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, and how he could hear no Tydings of *Clerimond*, and told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with 100000 Pagans, under the Conduct of *Valentine* and *Murgalant*, and to chase you out of these Confines, by the Command of King *Lucar*, and K. *Brandiffer*; but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the Pagans short Home. Quoth *Orson*, do as thou hast said, and win immortal Praise to thy Posterity: Sir, said *Pacolet*, I am bound in all Duty to your Brother *Valentine*, but the Service I shall now undertake, will highly Please you; first stand

stand you still upon your Guard, and in the Night put all your Men in readiness, and for that *Valentine* shall not be suspected to be in the Plot, he shall continue in his Tent, whilst I cast a strong Sleep on the *Sarazens*, and then may you come upon them, and slay every Man. It is good, said *Orson*; so *Orson* led him to King *Pepin*, to make him acquainted with the Enterprize, and *Pacolet* was Royally entertained for that Time: Now *Pacolet*, to the End there should grow no mistrust, gave certain Signs to *Murgalant*. Being in the City, he found out the Admiral *Burnas*, and saluted him with great Reverence, and delivered unto him the Message which he brought from *Murgalant*, which was, that of *Brandiffer's* Part were now arrived 100000, and *Murgalant* sends you Word by me, that to Morrow betimes you have your Men in a Readiness, to assail the Christians on the one Side of the City, and *Murgalant* will assail them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a Man of them Escape. The Admiral was glad to hear these Tydings, but knew not how this should come to pass; *Pacolet* took his leave of him, and returned back to *Murgalant*, with Salutations from the Admiral: So *Murgalant* gave him great Thanks for his Message, and *Pacolet* departed secretly to speak with *Valentine*. When he was come, he said thus unto him, your Brother *Orson*, and your Uncle King *Pepin*, greet you well by me, to whom I have related the whole Manner of your coming, because I would know the Plot he had in Hand, for he durst not reveal any Treason unto *Valentine*. The Night being come, wherein this bloody Stratagem is to be acted, so *Valentine* commanded the Watch to be strongly set, and would be in the Watch himself; but *Pacolet* found a Way to prevent him, and cause him to abide in his Tent. In the dead Time of the Night *Pacolet* went amongst the Pagans, and cast such a Charm that they fell asleep. This opportunity was not let slip by King *Pepin*, for he with his Army entred the Host with 60000 fighting Men; and set Fire amongst the Tents and Pavilions, and killed all that resisted: At last they came to the Tent of *Murgalant*, who lay asleep in his Bed, and being suddenly affrighted, skiped out, and one received his Body on a Dart, and so he fell down Dead.

This assault being given on the *Sarazens*. *Pacolet* said unto *Valentine*, see to save your self, for the Christians have killed the Watch, and entred the Host. *Pacolet* (said *Valentine*) thou hast made me break my promise with *Brandiffer*, for which I shall surely Dye. Fear not, quoth *Pacolet*, for he shall do no harm. The morrow *Burnas* issued out of *Angory*, and set upon *Pepin's* Host, who knew not what hapned. The Battle grew both Fierce and long. At last the Admiral couched his Spear, and running against a Knight of *Ba* struck him stark Dead; after that, with his Sword, he slew *Gyrard* of *Pari*. Then came he against *Robert* of *Normandy*, and lopt off his Leg. At la

King *Pepin* met with him, and couching his Spear, run him quite thorow : The Pagans seeing their Admiral Dead, retired into the City. the Christians following them ; but they defended themselves so valiantly with shot, that the Christians were fain to forsake the Walls ; but by some other Stratagems they won the City, putting all the *Sarazens* to the Sword : in this City was great Riches, which was divided among the Soldiers.

Chap: XXXVII How Valentine returned back to Indie, after the Battle, and bare with him the dead Body of King *Murgalant*: How he heard Tydings of his Father: How *Pacolet* freed the Indian King, and left *Brandiffer* in Prison: How *K. Lucar* caused all that Hundred that watched the Indian, to be drawn to Death at Horser Tail: How Valentine and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his Host, and went to *Angoty*, and of the Usurp of King *Pepin*: How he went into the Holy-Land with the Twelve Peers of France, and what happened: How *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed to it Father King *Pepin*, and the Twelve Peers of France: How *Caliph* of *Bendas* made Truce between the Indian, *Lucar*, *Brandiffer*, and how he was trapped in his own Net:

THE City being taken by the Christians, *Valentine* found the Body of *Murgalant* in the Field, caused it to put up, and covered with black. After certain Days sail, they arrived where *Lucar* and *Brandiffer* were, and in mourning brought it before the two Kings ; as they sat playing at Chesse : As soon as King *Lucar* saw *Valentine*, he said : *Kt.* welcome home, how fareth and speedeth our Forces, have you put all the Christians to the worst and taken *K. Pepin*, and his Nephew *Orson* ? Alas (said *Valentine*) it is fallen out contrary ; for we have lost the Field, and all our Men are slain : For *K. Firin*, who had the whole charge of the Watch, let his Men sleep, and so the Christians came, and made great havock of our Army : As soon as I got Tydings hereof, I awaked my Men, hoping to save them ; but it was too late. In this Battle was slain your Uncle *Murgalant*, whose Body I have here brought : This spectacle fretted *Brandiffer* at the Heart, that in madness he threw away the Chesse-board, and said, surely *Valentine* thou wert the cause of this. *Qd.* *Valentine*, I return him the lie that says so, and I will maintain my Innocency with my Sword. Nay (said *K. Lucar*) if he had plotted any Treason, he would never have come again ; then *Brandiffer* commanded the Body to be Royally enterred. This News gladded the *Indian*, and hereupon gathering up all his Forces, he issued forth of the City : The Battle being begun, *Valentine* threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand before him. At last, meeting the *Indian* King, he Smote him off his Horse : *Pacolet* seeing him down, *Valentine* and he led him to the Tent of *K. Brandiffer* : when Tydings came that the *Indian* King was taken, he called unto his Men, saying follow hard, and the Day is our own : so they entered the Battle, and drave the *Indians* to a retreat. When *Brandiffer* saw they

they with-drew, they followed them to the Gates, where fell on both sides a great Slaughter : The Battle lasted so long, that it was Night ; so *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* betook them to their Tents, and bad that the *Indian K.* should be brought before them : When *K. Lucar* saw him, he said unto him : Traitor, the end of thy life is now at Hand : The *Indian* made shift to understand him, but said never a Word. *K. Lucar* had no sooner ended his rough Speech, but there arrived a Messenger, who said unto *Brandiffer*, I bring you sad Tydings, O King, for *Pepin K. of France*, hath taken your City of *Angory*, and put to the Sword Man, Woman, and Child : These are ill Tydings indeed (quoth *Brandiffer*) but seeing we have the *K. of Indie* in subjection, I hope shortly to free my own Country. Then he said to *K. Lucar* : Son, we have the *K. of Indie* in hold, let us make short work with him, and to morrow Morning let him be hanged up ; which being done, we will speed to *Angory* against the *French*, and take vengeance for these wrongs done to me : Also I have there in a strong Castle, the Emperor of *Greece*, and the *Green Kt.* Prisoners ; who at my coming shall suffer Death : *Valentine* being present, was glad to hear of his Father ; so by a Sign, he acquainted *Pacolet*, that he should very shortly stand in need of his Art, who inwardly vowed that he would find some means to release them out of Prison : Also the *Indian King* looked wistlie on *Valentine*, and said thus to himself, Cursed be that Hour that thou escapest my Hands, for had I put the to Death, these Dangers had never befallen me : Then *K. Lucar* called a strong Guard of armed Sarazens, and said unto them ; keep well this Traytor, and to morrow he shall be hanged : So they took him, and brought him into one of the Pavillions, and bound him about the Middle to a Post, and so left him, falling to play again : Now *Valentine* called *Pacolet* to him, saying ; I am half in a doubt whether *Brandiffer* have my Father in hold, for if I were assured thereof, I would not have indangered my Body, as I have done in his Service : But now is the Time to be revenged : Sir, (qd. *Pacolet*) you have small reason to bear good will, therefore (if you please) I will find a way to free the *Indian King*, and to deliver *Brandiffer* into his Hands, so may your Uncle *Pepin* hold *Angory* still : This (qd. *Valentine*) would be worthy o thanks, where ore persecute thy Plot, that so I may help my Ucle, and deliver my Father *Pacolet* haveing an Eye to what he would do, after Supper came among those Hundred that had the Charge of the *Indian King* : Afte they had made a Fire without the Pavillion, *Pacolet* cast them all into Dead sleep : having so done, he went to the *Indian King*, and said : Nobl King, be glad in me, for I am *Mahomet*, and am come to set the free : The go thou to thy palace, and bare along with thee *Brandiffer* who shall know wither he goeth : Alas ! said the *Indian* to *Pacolet* taking him so

Mahom

Mahomet, it should seem that I have deserved well at thy Hands, when thou tookest so much pains to come down, and deliver me from Death: King, said *Pacolet*, trust in me, and believe the Counsel of the Wise: Herewith *Pacolet* led him towards *Brandiffer*, causing all the Watch to fall into a dead Sleep; and so Enchanted him, that he arose, made him ready, and went along with the *Indian King* to his Palace.

The *Indian* being thus set free, gave Thanks to *Mahomet* for his delivery: Then *Pacolet* brought him a Horse, made him Mount, and set *Brandiffer* behind him, and sent them packing for *Indie*, and so took his leave: At last the *Indian* came to the Gates of his his own City, and calling the Porter, was instantly let in: When *Rozamond* beheld him, she said: Sir, you are right welcome Home, but tell me how you came by my Father, that you have brought him with you? Is there a Peace concluded? No (quoth the King) *Mahomet* delivered him into my Hands, and freed me from Death: So by this Time ended the Vigor of the Charm, and *Brandiffer* awaking, began to say, how came I hither? some Devil hath Enchanted me: nay said the King, *Mahomet* hath brought us hither, that you may be at Peace with me: I had rather Die, therefore set me free, that I may go to my Host again. Not so, for since you are here, I mean to keep you. Now the Sarazens that Guarded the *Indian* lay, still asleep. At the Break of Day, *Lucar* came to the Pavilion where the *Indian* lay, but when the Pagans saw him, they cry'd for Mercy, for they had lost their Prisoner. Varlets, quoth *Lucar*, your Lives shall pay for it, so he caused them to be drawn along the Streets, at Horses Tails, and after Hanged, whereat *Pacolet* laughed, but *Valentine* said, Friend, I shall never be at ease till I have found out my Father, whom *Brandiffer* keepeth in Prison. Here *Valentine* and *Pacolet* leave the Pagans, and after Travel to hear Tydings of the Lady *Clerimond*.

You have heard before how King *Pepin* took *Angory*: So now will I make plain to you the manner of a Treason toward him by *Haufray* and *Henry*, it happened as the King was in his Bed in *Angory*, he had a Dream to this Effect: He thought that he beheld a Mass-priest, shewing unto him divers Relicks, besides a sumptuous Sepulchre, and three Times this Apparition troubled him: The Morning being now come, he called before him all his Barons, and declared unto them the Manner of this Dream, and said unto them: Lords, I know not what may befall, but I think it some Delusion; or else it may be that I should go visit the Holy Places without the City of *Jerusalem*. Then spake *Orson*, I will go with you if you Please; and I also, quoth *Myllon Daugler*: after the Twelve Peers offered themselves unto him, to assist him in his Pilgrimage. The King hearing them so forward, gave them Thanks, and calling before him *Haufray* and *Henry*, he said unto them,

you

you know that you are my natural Sons, but yet in such Time was you gotten, when I had not one Foot of Land in *France*, therefore it is my will, you enjoy this land of *Angory*, therefore keep it valiantly. Then *Haufray* said to *Henry*: You understand the King our Father well, do you not? he will prefer us to strange Lands; as if we were not worthy to be his Sons: now as for his young Son *Charles*, he provideth to leave him K. of *France*, and we must be content with a Foreign Part: Therefore be rul'd by me, and *Pepin* shall never return into *France*, to establish his Heir. We will work a Plot to deliver him into the Hands of the Pagans, and then shall we be Kings of *France*, and Emperors of *Rome*; all which I thirst after. Brother (quoth *Henry*) your Words are well put together, but how shall this Thing be accomplished: *Haufray* said, I shall tell thee how, go unto King *Brandiffer*, and tell him that I must have his Daughter *Galazy*: and being with him tell him that King *Pepin* and the twelve Peers of *France* do determine to go to the Holy Sepulchre, and they may easily be surprized, for they take along with them but few in Train. Brother this will do well, wherefore make hast to *India*, there shall you find *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*: When you have found them, acquaint them with the Plot, and I will go along with them: So, so, (quoth *Haufray*) for I shall never be quiet till this business be finished. Thus had they plotted Treason against their Father, who now was on the Seas, thinking to accomplish their Pilgrimage. *Henry* going along with them, and *Haufray* hath likewise taken his Way toward *India*. So leave we them, and return to other matters. The *Caliph* of *Bendas* being come into the Host of *Brandiffer*, and *Lucar* treated a Truce for a Month, between them and the King of *India*: So appointing a Day for to meet thereupon the *Caliph* began thus to say: Lords, it is know unto you that the Christians have won the Realm of *Angory*, I wonder that you continue here maintaining a needless War, and suffer the Enemy to grow upon you in a Place of such Import: Therefore list a while to what I shall declare: True it is that the King of *India* slew your Father *Trompart*, for that he killed his Uncle, this was one for another. Therefore let the *Indian* deliver *Brandiffer*, and as for *Rozamond*, let her be brought and set between the two Kings, *Lucar* and the *Indian*: And if she will stay with the *Indian* let her; if she will go with *Lucar*, let him receive her. This his Counsel was generally accepted, and *Rozamond* was brought forth, whereupon the *Caliph* propounded the Matter for which she was called. *Rozamond* having heard what was said, she resolved to keep her to the *Indian* King; and *Lucar* departed very sorrowful. The same day that the *Caliph* made this Confession, *Haufray* came unto the Host of *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, making hast to their Pavilions, he saluted them, unto whom *Brandiffer* said: What wind hath driven you hi-

their? Sir (said *Haufray*) that I have to deliver craveth Secrefie and attention. So they drew from their attendants, and then *Haufray* said: Lords, you know that I am Son to *Pepin* of *France*, and I also understand that you (speaking to *Brandiffer*) have a Beautiful Daughter; now if it please you to give me your Daughter in Marriage, I will deliver into your Hands my Father, and all the Peers of *France*, that have so much damnified you; for know, that in the habit of Pilgrims they have taken their Journey to visit the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, slenderly accompanied; Quoth *Brandiffer*, for these Tydings I will give thee my Daughter *Galazy*, but it must be upon condition that you renounce your Faith, Yes, qd. *Haufray*, that shall I do; when King *Brandiffer* saw the Treachery of *Haufray*, first that he would betray his Father, next forsake his Religion, he with-drew himself to advise with *Lucar* and the *Caliph*, saying to them; You see the Treasons of this Man, that demandeth my Daughter, how dare I trust him that seeketh the Death of his Father, and ruin of the whole state of *France*? No, I will not make my Peace with such a Homicide, I had rather see my Daughters Death, than give her to a vile Traytor. After these words he called to *Haufray*, and said, Sir, I am glad of your coming, and this shall be your task, you shall go to my Daughter, and bear this letter from me, there pass away your time till we have leasure to resolve on your Business. Sir (said *Haufray*) I am ready to accomplish your demand. So he delivered him the Letter, and a 100 Men to conduct him on his Way; After they were at Sea, wltin few Days they came within the Sight of the strong Castle where *Galazy* was; when they were come to the Gates, the Porter called to 'em, saying; My Lords, you may not enter without some certain token. Porter, said *Haufray*, tell the Lady we shall satisfie her. The Porter went to the Lady, and said Lady, without the Gate stand a company of Men that fain would enter, and as I think they are come from your Father. The Lady bid her Gentleman Usher go know what they were, who did as she commanded; as soon as she understood they came from her Father, she bound up the Lions, and opened the Gate, so *Haufray* entered, and thought all this had been for his good; but it fell out contrary. Being entered the Castle he was brought before the Lady *Galazy*, whose Beauty then amazed him so that he was not able to Speak one word. After some space of time he saluted the Lady, and said unto her; Fair Sovereign, know that for the great renown that I have heard of your admirable Beauty, I have left my Country, and passed the Seas, to acquaint your Father with that which shall make him happy; and for that you shall find me speak nothing but truth, loe here is a Letter by me from him. The Lady taking the Letter, read it; when she had read it, she beheld *Haufray*, saying, Vassal, I have read the Letter, and find thee

a Christian, and that thou hast sold the life of thy Father, and the twelve Peers of France; all this my Father certifieth by his Letter to me, and commandeth me, that I determine what shall be done to thee. Now I swear by the Law I profess, I will neither take Pitty, nor Mercy upon such a wretch as thou art; so she called to her Officers, and committed him to Prison in a Dark Dungeon: *Haufray* seeing what had hapned, said; it is a bitter Marriage to me; and so he was convey'd out of her Presence. Now in the same Dungeon lay the Emperor of Greece and the *Green Knight*; and when they heard they should have another Fellow Prisoner, the Emperor, as soon as he came in, demanded of him whence he was? *Haufray* said, it is no matter of whence, but I am that unhappy *Haufray*, bastard Son of K. *Pepin*, Why, qd. the Emperor, I am the Emperor of Greece, can you tel me how it fareth with my Brother K. *Pepin*, my two Sons, and with the residue of the Peers of France? Sir (said *Haufray*) they are in this Country of *Angory*, and have won the same in Battle. So leave we them in Prison, and return to *Valentine* and *Pacolet*.

Chap. XXXVIII. How Valentine and *pacolet* came before the Castle: How *pacolet* raised up the Devil to ask his Counsel about the taking of the Castle: How *Brandiffer* brought the Twelve Peers of France into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them: How he Besieged the City of *Angory*. And how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was Captive in *Angory*, made means to Valentine, to deliver him upon sufficient Ransom.

After many Days sail, these two arrived at the Castle, and viewing it strangely, thought it impregnable; at last *Pacolet* said, Sir, anon I will tell you more: so he went aside, and cast a Figure, and incontinently there appeared unto him a Devil, who said unto him: Leave of your Enterprize, for the Castle is not to be taken, but by Treason, so vanished: Suddenly after his departure there arose a great Smoak about the Castle, inso much that *Valentine* lost the sight of *Pacolet*, and was driven in to an amazement. This mist being dispersed, *Pacolet* came to *Valentine* and said: Let us depart, for there is no way to conquer this Castle, but by Treason: So they forsook the Castle, and went towards *Angory*: Being there, they demanded Tydings of K. *Pepin*, but it was answered, he was gon to *Jerusalem* on Pilgrimage; so *Valentine* resolved to stay there till his Uncle returned, but all in vain; for by the Treason of *Haufray*, K. *Pepin* was surprized by *Brandiffer*, as you shall hear. K. *Pepin* being come to *Jerusalem*, by the direction of certain Guides, they were conducted to the Holy Place. During the time of their abode here in *Jerusalem*, came *Brandiffer*, the Indian K. and K. *Lucar*, (having had intelligence by *Haufray*) accompanied with a great Host of men, and marched so far, that they came to the K. of *Jury* being come unto him

him, he did very much Marvel at their coming; and after Salutations, demanded the Cause; Then spake *Brandiffer*; Sir, know this, that by a Christian we are informed, that lately there is come into this Holy City, certain Pilgrims, the one of them is King *Pepin* of *France*, the rest are the twelve Peers; if it be so, we crave your Aid and Assistance; for they are unto us mortal Enemies, and have taken from me my City of *Angory*, making great Spoils within my Territories; wherefore we desire you, that they may be delivered into our Hands, that we may proceed against them according to our Law. your demand is Reasonable (quoth the King of *Jury*) therefore let it be done according to your wish; for I am an Enemy to all such as shall deride us, and our Religion. I will send unto the Patriarch about this Matter, and if he have any such *French* Pilgrims, that he presently bring them before you. The Patriarch being sent for went unto the Pilgrims, and said, Friends, you must come before the King of *Jury*; Hereat *Pepin* grew exceeding sad, for he thought he should lose his Life; therefore said, Lords let us here make Hen-



ry our Lord, and I will wait upon him as his Page, bearing his Hat and Staff; *Henry* being too skilful in Treasons denied it, saying, here's *Orson*, and Duke *Myllon*, more worthier than I, let them take it upon them. Quoth *Myllon*, so you please I shall do any Thing. Then they took their Way toward the Pa-

gan that sent for them. Duke *Myllon* took upon him the Person of the King and the King bear his Hat and Staff. The Patriarch, after he had delivered them to the King of *Jury* he departed, and the King said unto them; It is told me you are all *French-men*, come as Spies, and amongst you is the K. of *France*: Sir (said one of the Company) the King of *France* is not here: How! not here? (qd. the K. of *Jury*) if he do not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a grievous Death. Then spake *Hen.* It is not I. At these words Duke *Myllon* doubted Treason: and said, Sir, I am the King of *France*, but withal suffer me to tell you a Thing worthy of Note; we are all Christians, and it is free for us to go safely, even by your own Laws and Customs of your Country, paying a certain Tribute. Now this Tribute is by us daily paid and observed; therefore you do us much wrong to detain us contrary to your Custom. Say what you will (qd. *Jury*) but to Spies there is no such priviledges allowed; and now he calleth forth *Brandiffer* and *Lucar*, and said unto them, Lords, these be the Christian Spies, take them, and do with them as pleaseth you, then the Pilgrims were laid hold on, and *Brandiffer* said, Lords, let these be conveyed to my strongest Castle, and put them into the deepest Dungeon; and let us make hast to *Angory*, and beat out all our Enemies, after into *France*, to bring that to our Subjection; all this may be easily effected, sith we have all the Peers thereof in Captivity; so that there is not a Man of worth to make resistance: This done, the *Indian King* required the little Prisoner to make his Drawf off, (which was King *Pepin*) his request was likewise granted, so he took him with him, and loved him exceedingly.

The *Indian King* taking his leave, every one of the Peers lookt pittifully on King *Pepin*, but durst not speak to him: *Pepin* being on his Way with the *Indian*, began thus to lament: How unfortunate am I among them? Alas! Duke *Myllon*, it grieves me most for thee; for thy Love towards me hath brought thy self in Danger: But for my Son *Henry*, I will lay my Curse on thee, that refused to relieve thy Father in his Extremity: Farewel *Bertba* my Wife, and my young Son *Charles*, thy Case is most Dangerous; for what will not Traytors attempt against thee? By this Time is the *Indian* come Home into his own Land. When the Lady *Rozamond* saw his approach, she was right glad, and received him with kindness, at last she threw her Eyes on King *Pepin*, and demanded of the King, where he had that little Man: Lady (said he) he was given me at *Jerusalem*, being come thither with the King of *France*, &c. But now let us return to speak somewhat of *Clerimond*, who was in the Court of the *Indian King*: The King's manner was to send her every Meal of the best Meat from his own Table, and one Night at Supper, called *Pepin* to him, for to carry her Provision, saying unto him: Go into the great Chamber on the other Side of the Court, there shalt thou finde

a foolish Women, bear this from me to her ; *Pepin* did as he commanded ; but when he saw her in those rags, he said to her : I pittie your distressed estate : When the Lady heard him say so, she said, Friend, pittie thy self ; let me alone, I am not what I seem to be : But tell me, art thou a Christian ? Lady (said *Pepin*) I am ; and come from the Realm of *France*. Then the Lady, with a smiling Countenance, said : Know you then King *Pepin*, and his Nephew *Valentine* ? Ay (qd. he) and his Brother *Orson*, and his Father the Epmeror of *Greece*. The Lady hearing him say so, began to shed Tears, and yet spake, saying, Friend, may I put trust in you ? Ay, said he, even as well as if I were your natural Father : Then know, all that I have done, is but counterfeit ; for I am a Christian, and the woeful love of *Valentine*, that was given to him as his Wife, but was betrayed, and stolen away by King *Trompart* : Then she unfolded the manner of all these things. When King *Pepin* heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, and said unto himself, thus : Ha ! what trust is in this World . alas for this poor Lady ! alas for *Valentine* ! and yet to see it is my chance at last to find her out in this unlookt for Adventure : After he had ended these Lamentations, he said : Lady now I understand whom you are, and sith you trusted me with the Secrets of your Heart, give me leave also a little to shew you who I am : Here you see me, and in what shape I go cloathed ; yet know, I am *Pepin*, King of *France*, and by disasterous chance, am fallen into this Servitude - As for *Valentine*, he undertaketh Dangerous adventures, and continueth still without taking any rest : Now I have knowledge of you, if between us we can make these things known to him, with great joy you may Embrace each other : At these words the Lady swounded, but he seeing her recovered, left her, and came unto the King. So here we rest as to this matter, and return to say somewhat of *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* who are busied in leading the Twelve Peers of *France* to Prison

Brandiffer having the twelve Peers in Prison, and with them *Haufray* and *Henry*, the only workers of the Treason, came to this Castle, where he told all the hole Enterprize to his Daughter, how the 12 Peers fell into his Hand : Having finished his tale, he put them into the Dungeon where the Emperor, the *Green Knight*, and *Haufray* lay : *Henry* was much troubled that he durst not discover his mind to *Brandiffer* ; for he was the first that was led into the Dungeon, after him *Myllon Daugler*, who by chance fell upon *Haufray*, which made him angry : Be not angry, (qd. he) for their are many more to come down after me, to whom you must give place : *Haufray* knew it ware *D. Myllon*, and demanded of him, by what means he came thither ? Nay (qd. *Myllon*) I rather wonder how you came here, for I am sure we left you within the City *Angory*. Quoth the Traytor, I was taken for a Spy,

Spy, and for that cause I am hither brought. Now are all these Lords sorrowing in Prison; but when *Haufray* understood that King *Pepin* was not among them, he seemed exceeding glad, tho' in his Heart could wish his Death. Every one looked for nothing but Death, save only *Orson*, he bare it out comfortably, saying: Lords, let us yet trust to my Brother *Valentine* and *Pacolet*, who by Enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Castle was Inpregnable. *Brandiffer*, having thus made all sure, called before him his Daughter *Galazy*, and said unto her: I must depart to satisfy mine Army; being there, I shall meet with the *Indian K.* and *Lucar*, both which will aid me against the *French*, that holdeth the City of *Angory*, therefore keep well my Prisoners, and when he came unto his Army, he found *Lucar* ready, but as for the *Indian K.* he sent his Forces, and came not himself, by reason that *Rozamond* was lately Dead. The two Kings gathered up their Forces, and took their way towards *Angory*, whither being come *Valentine* had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for *K. Pepin*. This much amazed the noble *Valentine*, when he saw the Tents so nigh him: at last he called *Pacolet* unto him, saying, I wonder I hear not of my Uncle *Pepin*. Fear not (said *Pacolet*) for e'er long we will hear better News; and there withal departed from *Angory*, and never rested till he came to the Camp of *K. Lucar*, who espying him, demanded of him what news, and what was become of his Master, who so long time he had served? *Pacolet* answered, Sir, he is long since Dead, and I come to seek a new Master. Qd. *Lucar* wilt thou serve me? Yes (quoth *Pacolet*.) Thus was he received into his Service, but he ill rewarded his new Master, for that same Night by Enchantment, he cast *Lucar* into such a Sleep, that he carried him into the City of *Angory*. *Valentine* was right glad of this, and *Lucar* being placed before a Fire, the Enchantment ceased, and he awoke. Being awaked, he became sore astonished to see himself thus betrayed, and at last *Pacolet* said unto him: Master, I am at your Service, have you any thing to command me: At the which words *Lucar* grew much enraged, and taking a Knife, gave *Pacolet* such a Wound that he fell down Dead. *Valentine* seeing this accident was right sorrowful, and said: Such a nother Friend shall I never have; false Traytor (quoth he) thou hast slain him that was all my hope, then said *Lucar*, I am glad that Traytor is slain.

Now *Valentine* went towards the dead Corps, and took out of his Bosom a pair of writing Tables, in which was written the manner of his Art. These Tables had *Pacolet* ever made *Valentine* acquainted withal, wishing him that if he out lived him, he should make great account of them; *Valentine* put them up, and after made use of them: here would *Valentine* have *K. Lucar* put to Death, but being better advised, he was safely kept in Prison

Prison; if so be that any worthy Personage should be taken by the Pagans, then *Lucar* should serve for Ransome of the Other. Then *Valentine* caused the Body of *Pacolet* to be Honourably interred, whose Death was bewailed of all. The next Morning there arose an out-cry throughout the Army, that *Lucar* was gone no Man knew how: amongst the rest *Brandiffer* made great Lamentation, till one told him he was in *Angory*, and how he had Slain *Pacolet*, *Brandiffer* was glad *Pacolet* was Slain, but sorry for *Lucar*; at last calling to him a Messenger, he sent to *Valentine* to ask him if he would deliver *Lucar* for King *Pepin*, the Emperor or *Orson*, or any other of the twelve Peers of *France*; the Messenger departed on his Way with these Conditions, and coming to the City of *Angory*, desired to speak with *Valentine*: After Salutations on both Parts, he declared his Message from King *Brandiffer*, *Valentine* hearing the Effect of this Message, was much amazed, and said to the Messenger, how cometh it to pass, that *Brandiffer* can make Choice of all these Valiant Men? Quoth the Messenger, I think it is not unknown, how King *Pepin*, accompanied with the twelve Peers of *France*, not long since went to *Jerusalem*, and having among them one Traytor, was delivered into the Hands of *Brandiffer*, and by him taken in *Jerusalem*, and committed to Prison, wherefore having thus related unto you the Truth, said: Will you change one Prisoner for another? Messenger I shall give Answer to thee anon: So entering into the Hall, he assembled unto him all his Council, saying to them: Thus it is, that for our Prisoner *Lucar*, we may have delivered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle King *Pepin*: Now in this Cause let us resolve what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are most bound to your natural Father, and therefore we judge it most meet to release him. Lords, quoth *Valentine* you have well advised, but yet I am determined to do otherwise, for you all know that my Mother was wrongfully banished, and so in exile brought me forth, and my Brother in the Forrest of *Orleance*, where we might both have been devoured of Beasts, if my Uncle *Pepin* had not taken me up. Thus he nourished and brought me up to Man's Estate: After he made me Knight and bestowed on me many Preferments; therefore I say these Things considered, my will is, that my Uncle be set free for King *Lucar*; he being at Liberty, we will quickly work the freedom of my Father, and all the Rest. When the Barons had heard the Wisdom of *Valentine*, they agreed all with one Voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then called they to them the Messenger of *Brandiffer*, and said: Friend, return this Answer to thy Master, that we shall willingly yield the Body of King *Lucar*, upon Condition that he deliver unto us the Body of King *Pepin*: So the Messenger departed; being returned Home, he delivered his Message as *Valentine* had delivered it to him, whereupon *Brandiffer* swore by the Gods, he should have his Request.

Chap. XXXIX. How Myllon Dangler (who was taken for the king of France) was delivered out of Prison in lieu of king Lucar: how Valentine and the Duke of Myllon issued out of Angory, and won the Battle from the Sarazens: How king pepin was delivered in change for the king of indie's Marshal, left Angory, and returned into France, to succour his Wife.

Brandiffer understanding Valentine's Mind, he suddenly dispatched the Messengers to his Daughter Galazy, who kept the strong Castle, willing her to deliver unto these Messengers the King of France, and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hearing her Father's Mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Goaler of the Prison, and commanded him to call forth the King of France, the Goaler went to the Prison, calling for the King of France, for i'm commanded to set him at Liberty. Duke Myllon hearing him say so, could not so satisfie himself, but in doubting manner said, I am here, if it be so, I am the first that must suffer Death, I am ready to lay it down for my Religion. Sir (quoth the Goaler) 'tis no such matter, for you are to be delivered Body for Body, to Ransome another Pagan King which resideth in Captivity amongst the Christians. When Henry heard these Words, he repented he denyed to take upon him the Person of the King. Thus Duke Myllon took his leave with Tears: The Emperor of Greece said unto him, above all, I pray remember me to my Son Valentine. and me too, quoth Orson, and tell him in what Misery we be, requesting him either quickly to work our delivery, or we are not able to endure our Lives; Myllon comforted them all he might, and said: Lords, I will not return into France, till I see you at Liberty, and so he took his Way. Being out of Prison, he went to the Lady Galazy, and did unto her Reverance, which she kindly accepted, and commended him to his Fortunes: So the Duke went along with the Messengers that were sent for the K. of France. When they were come before Brandiffer, he said unto him: King, I would have you know wherefore I sent for you, and to that end I have appointed those Messengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of Angory to Valentine, and in your stead send me back my Son Lucar, as he hath promised. Sir (qd. the Duke) all this shall be effected to your wish, and if he will not deliver K. Lucar according to your expectation, I shall willingly come again according to your Mercy. Royally spoke (qd. Brandiffer) I ask no more. So the Duke took leave, and departed with the Messengers towards Angory. After few days they arrived to the Palace where Valentine lay, being in sight one of another, they kindly embraced. After D. Myllon took Valentine aside, and related to him the whole course of his Actions, and how K. Pepin was led away by the Indian K. who knew not who he was, and how that he had taken upon him the King's Name, on-

ly to shield him from danger. When *Valentine* heard this, he thanked him for his Deed, and began to recount what a benefit had happened to him, that he was delivered, and the rest left in Bonds; for by your true Loyalty to your Sovereign you are escaped from danger. Then *Valentine* caused King *Lucar* to be brought before him, and said: K. *Lucar*, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my Hands, I shall remember you for the Death of my friend *Pacolet*. These words being ended, he delivered him unto the Messengers: Now was *Lucar* delivered, and the Duke *Myllon* restored in his stead: *Valentine* having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers the Ducks Company, they gathered all their scattered Troops into Battle-array, and with the number of 50000 fighting Men, they issued out of the City upon the Enemy. *Brandiffer* hearing thereof, made up against him, accompanied with twenty four Kings, his attendants, all holding him their chief Lord; but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

Then *Valentine* resolved to give a new On-set upon the Pagans, and courageously heartening his Men, he set upon that part where was *Brandiffer*, and K. *Lucar*. in the thickest of the Battle, an Admiral (who was Lord of *Massidon*) espying a French Man making havock with his Sword among the Pagans, he made towards him, and hitting him with his Axe, he clave his Head in two pieces: He was espied by another French Cavalier, who made towards this Admiral, in the presence of *Myllon Daugler*, Smote him Dead: For the which Act of Valour *Myllon* knighted him, and said among them all: That he that won Valour should receive the like reward, in this manner continued the Battle all that Day. At last they strove on each part which should Sound a Retreat first, but nither side would yield, so that they continued all that Night, making great fires to give them light. At break of Day the Battle began afresh in most Fierce manner, that Blood ran down as Water in Channels.

Valentine and D. *Myllon* behaved themselves right valiantly, on every side they beat down both Horse and Man. But *Valentine* was too forward, for he entered so fair into the Enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of *Brandiffer*. Being there, the Indian Admiral espied him, who ran so fiercely at him, that he slew *Valentine's* Horse under him, who perceiving himself unhorfed, lightly got upon his Feet, and with his Sword hewed out a passage, but he could not have escaped, had not D. *Myllon* by chance relieved him with a fresh Horse. So *Valentine* retired himself out of the Battle to refresh his tyred Limbs. When the Indian Marshal saw their side had the worst, he by his Policy withdrew his Forces, and in the Night timedrew out of sight; so that at the last they took them to their Heels and run away.

Valen-

Valentine perceiving it, told D. Myllon thereof, so they determined that Valentine and his Troops should set upon the Marshal, which they did, and fell upon the Indians in such furious manner, that they, upon their first adventure, broak their Battle-array. The Marshal seeing it, thought to have fled, but Valentine meeting him at this advantage, lent him such a rap with his Spear, as both Horse and Man fell to the Earth. Being on the Ground, the Souldiers would have killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the Custody of four valiant Knights.

In this Bickering there was many Prisoners of account taken, all which Valentine sent into Angory, to be kept in safety. By this time, Brandisfer and Lucar knew they had the worst, but they could not make resistance. At last they resolved to return again into their own Countrys. and renew their Forces afresh, so wrapping up their Ensigns, they took their way towards the Sea-coast, and the Christians followed after, killing all that withstood them: Of all the Pagans multitudes that went into the Field escaped but 100 Pagans: They being gone, the Christians rifling their Tents, found inestimable Treasure, and having so done, they returned to Angory, to rest their tired Limbs. After the Christians had won the Battle, and given burial to the Dead, Valentine commanded the Prisoners to be brought before him. Among the rest was the Marshal of Indie, of whom he demanded if he would forsake his Mahometry, the Marshal answered he would sooner forsake his Life than Religion: Then D. Myllon demanded of what Country he was, he said, I am a Marshal of Indie, and one whom the K. loveth. Qd. D. Myllon to Valentine, we are made happy in this Prisoner, for in exchange of him we shall release K. Pepin, who was led away by the Indian King, to be his Dwarf, when we were taken Prisoners at Jerusalem: then they demanded of him if the K. had not in his possession a Christian of low Stature: Yes, qd. he, there remaineth such a one in his Court, but not as his Prisoner, and thither was he brought when the 12 Peers of France were taken in Jerusalem. Marshal, qd. Valentine, it is he after whom we enquire, wherefore let him be brought hither, and delivered to us, and you shall be set at liberty; for he is a Page whom I ever loved, attended on my Person. At these words the Marshal rejoyced, and sent Letters to the Indian King; who receiving them, was willing to Change, for he knew not that it was K. Pepin, and calling him before him, he said Friend, we give you free liberty to depart my Country, for my Marshal being taken among the Christians, shall be surrendred in your stead: K. Pepin thanked him, and taking his leave of the K. he ran unto the Lady Clerimond, and said, Lady, take good Heart, for I am set at liberty, and I will send Valentine unto you, who will soon work your release. The Lady hearing this, was very joyful

and *Pepin* departed with the Messengers towards *Angory*. After some few days they arrived there, where the French-men spared for no cost, to shew their Love to King *Pepin*. At last *Valentine* said: Uncle, we had good hap in taking the Marshal, and by that Means procured your Liberty. Nephew (said King *Pepin*) you above all Men have most Cause to rejoyce, for I bring you the happiest News that ever you heard: Fair *Clerimond*, whom you so long have lost, is now found, and by me sendeth you Hearty Commendations: then he related her Misfortunes, and how she had demeaned herself, to shun the Love of the *Indian King*. *Valentine* hearing this joyful Tydings, he uttered these Words: Dear Lady, thou hast bought Love at too dear a Rate; and cursed I if I prove False; and for Trial hereof, I will either purchase thy Freedom, or lose my Life. This Speech being ended, the Marshal was delivered. Then *Valentine* betook him to his Chamber to try the Tables that he took out of *Pacolet's* Bosom when he was Slain, and found every Thing set down, to fall out just as it was now come to pass, and taking Pen, Ink and Paper, he wrote down what there he found, and Sewing it unto his Doublet, for fear of losing; it stood him in great Stead after, for the Safe-guard of his Life, as will hereafter Appear. King *Pepin* being Resident in *Angory*, News was brought him from his Wife *Bertha*, that all *France* was doubtful of his Life, and of the twelve Peers of *France*, because they heard they were taken Prisoners by the Pagans at *Jerusalem*. This Report running for Current throughout *France*, hath caused *Arthur* King of *Britain*, with a puissant Host to enter the Kingdom, and to win the Crown of *France* by Violence. Also the said *Arthur* hath committed to exile your young Son *Charles*: When King *Pepin* heard these Tydings, he grew wonderful Desperate, and presently called together all his Barons, and sat in Counsel what was requisite to be done in such a Plot: At last it was resolved, that King *Pepin* in Person should depart into his own Land, to suppress the Usurper; but *Valentine* began to speak to the King, Saying, Fair Uncle, it were most Requisite that I tarry here to gather new Forces, to rescue my Father, and the twelve Peers of *France*: Do so (qd. *Pepin*) and if it so fall out, that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh Supplies against the Pagans, that you may with more ease compass what you intend to do.

Chap. XI. How *Valentine*, under the shape of a Physician, went into *Indie*, to see and speak with the Fair *Clerimond*: how *Valentine* rode away with her: How the King of *Britain* was given to King *Pepin* by Treason: how *Valentine* took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, and all the Rest of the Prisoners: how the Emperor, Orson, and the Green Knight kept a strong Garrison in the Castle: How *Houshay* and *Henny* surprised the Death of their Father: how the Emperor of *Greece*, Orson, and the Green Knight left the Castle, and came to the succour of *Valentine* in *Angory*: how the Christians issued out of the City of *Angory*, and did Battle to the Sarazens: How

Valentine ignorantly slew his Father: And how Myllon Daugler returned into France, and Valentine and Orson into Greece.

YOU have heard already, that King *Pepin* brought News unto *Valentine* of the Lady *Clerimond*, which having heard, it would not out of his mind; at last he resolved to pass from *Angory* to *Indie*, accompanied with one Esquire, and in the shape of a Physician, he went to Sea with the *Indian Merchants*: being arrived, he lay in the City at an Inn-holders House, till his Gown and other Habiliments were in Readiness: At the first entrance in this Inn, the Host asked him what he was? He said a Physician, and can Cure any manner of Disease: The Host believed him; and his Esq served him as his Apothecary or Clerk: In this Manner, lying there about four Days, he called his Host to him, and desired him to get a Man to go about the City, to make known his Art, and see who needed Help, that I may Cure them; for I would fain get something to defray my Charges, while I lye in your House; but in the mean Space, rather than you shall mistrust me, I will leave you a good Pawn: Marry (qd. the Host) with all my Heart, I accept of your Gage: So *Valentine* delivered him a Rich Mantle, furred quite through with costly Furs, and bad him bring before him that Party that should make known his Art: The Host went out, and brought him a ragged Fellow: *Valentine* yet was glad of such a Fellow as this, and new cloathed him from Head to Foot, and said unto; My Friend, go thy Ways into the City, and cry about the same, that there is come a Physician, that can Heal all Diseases, even Mad Men or Women, he will undertake to Cure.

This Fellow did as he was commanded, and passed from Place to Place, to publish this Doctor's Skill: At last these Tydings came to the King, because he had given out, that he could recover Mad Folks to their former Senses: So the King bearing good will to the Lady *Clerimond*, sent for his Physician who had before him many Cripples, Blind, Lame and Crooked; but he let them all, and came unto the King; for there lay the Mark at which he aimed: Being come before the King, he did his Obeysance in the Name of the great God *Jupiter*: and the King said unto him: Sir, you are Welcome to my Court, first Dine, and then I shall tell you further the Cause of my sending for you: the King being set and served, made *Valentine* also to be richly attended, and Dinner being done, said unto him; Sir, I have a Beauteous Lady in this Palace, whom I would make my Queen, for I Love her dearly, but she would not Consent, till the Term of one Year was expired, I granted her to forbear that Year, as she demanded; but at the End she was possessed with a Lunacy, inso much that none durst come within her Reach; sometimes she Whistles, anon she cryeth out in a pittifull Manner, another while she Laugheth, and then she falleth into a Flood of Tears, so that my He

is over-charged with sorrow for her: Now if your Skill extend self to Cure her, I will give you more wealth than you can ask, for my Wife *Rozamond* being Dead, I would make her Queen of *Indie*: My Lord (quoth *Valentine*) fear not but she shall do well; but she is the harder to be cured, in that it hath siezed her so long: Again, I must be with her all Night, to mark the manner of her fits: You shall (quoth the King) have one appointed to bring you thither, but look to your self least she harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided *Valentine* to her Window: Now go thy way, and leave me alone. When *Valentine* beheld her in this desperate case, he said; Alas! my Love, you have bought me dear. as I have you; but by the Gods, I swear, I shall never return again to *France* till I have you along with me, or here lose my life: The Lady beheld him fearfully, and what soever came first to Hand she threw at him, which much amazed him: Then said *Valentine*, is this true madness, or but feigned: Dear Love (quoth he) tell me true; I am *Valentine* your love, for whom I have suffered great damage: Think on the Brazen-head that you gave me, or of my Brother *Orson*, that had the string cut in his Mouth, or how you were stolen away by the Enchanter *Adrimain*. When the Lady heard this, she fell into a Swound for joy; and being again recovered, she said: Alas! my Love, how many Dangers we have passed thro'; you for me and I for you? And now behold in what baseness I have carried my self for thee. Lady, Love dearly bought is the sweetest: by this time the Trumpets sounded to bring in the King's meat for Supper so that he said unto the Lady, My love, I will go into the Palace, but after Supper I will come again; for the King knoweth not but that I am a Physician, and hath sent for me to heal you: The Lady bid him go; as soon as the King saw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady? Yes (quoth *Valentine*) to Morrow you shall hear her speak as discreetly as ever she did. The King was so joyful thereat, that he gave unto him a Rich Mantle, all beset with precious Stones, and caused him to sit down at his own Table. After Supper, *Valentine* said unto the King, it is necessary I have a Fire all this Night in the Chamber where my Patient is; for she will be extream sick all this Night. Well qd. the King, let all things be done, spare for no cost. Now *Valentine* takes his way to the Chamber of Fair *Clerimond*, with one that carried Wood to make a Fire withal; which being done, he willed every one to depart, save only his Esd; then *Valentine* shut all the Doors and Windows, and said unto *Clerimond*; Sweet Lady, now may we Embrace at our pleasure, and resting his Eyes aside, he espied the Horse of Wood, and asked her whose was, she answered, *Pacoler's*: Then said *Valentine*, let us hence immediately, where unto she consented.

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with *Pacolet's* Horse, mounted him with *Clerimond* and his *Pfd*; in a Moon-shine Night, and with great expedition hasted into the City of *Angory*; being come thither, *Valentine* caused the Gates thereof to be opened; and there was great joy for the Lady *Clerimond*. The next Morning *Valentine* caused her to be clad in rich habillments, and married her: By this time the K. knew of her Escape, and grew frenzy, and said, Ha! thou false Enchanter, hast thou deceived me? if thou fall once



again into my Hands, I will quickly bereave thee of life: And so he caused pursuit to be made after *Valentine*, but all in vain, for they found him not. Here leave we them. Now I proceed to tell you of King *Pepin*, how he hasted into *France*, to the succour of *Bertha* his Wife; and to chastise the Usurper. The K. of *Britain* not thinking what would happen, strengthened himself with all the Forces he could, and sent out Proclamation; that all that could bear Arms should assist him into *France*. Hereupon Queen *Bertha*, with her young Son *Charles*, fled to *Lyons* to seek Succour: at the same time lived a Worthy and Trusty Earl of *Anjoy*, who favouring the Queen, and pitting her distress, fortified his Castle against the *Britains*, to whom the Queen sent 4000 Horse to keek the Passage. At last the K. of *Britain* bid the Earl give him Passage into *France*, but he answered, No: Here

Hereupon there was appointed a Band of Soldiers, to lay Siege at *Angiers*, but the Earl kept close within the City, and would not issue out thereof. During the Siege, King *Pepin* came to *Paris*, and there was joyfully receiv'd: When the Queen understood he was at *Paris*, she hasted unto him, and when she came before him, in Tears, she said: Dear Lord, Revenge us on this Uurper, Lady (qd. the King) fear it not: So calling about him his Counsellors and Men of War, he made hast to furnish up his Companies, and many were there that Voluntarily offered themselves to do the King any Service. By this time the King of *Britain* heard that King *Pepin* was coming against him with a great Army, which feared him, and not without Cause, for his Friends betrayed him unto King *Pepin*, to save their own Estates, and make their Peace the better with the King. So resolving hereupon on a Night they came to him lying on his Bed, and led him perforce before King *Pepin*, who presently caused his Head to be Smitten off, within the City of *Paris*: Now they thought that betrayed him; all was well, but the King afterwards siezed all their Lands into his Hands.

Now was *Valentine* much troubled in Mind, how he should free the Emperor his Father from Imprisonment, for he knew well that Castle was not to be won by War, or Policy, or by any Thing but by Treason: At last he resolved on a subtile Plot, and put to Sea twelve Ships, maned with two Thousand Men, laden with all manner of Riches, as precious Stones, and Silks; and thus as Merchants arrived they at this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the Shape of a Merchant, setting a Rich Crown on his Head, and said unto his Men: Be you all privately armed within the Ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Sarazens come aboard, put them to Death. Then coming toward the Castle-gate, with the Crown on his Head, the Porter said, what bring you hither: Friend, said *Valentine*, I am a Merchant, going into *Spain*, and having many Rich Commodities, I hear-say, that I might not pass without a Tribute, on pain of Death; said the Porter, i'll go to my Lady, and bring you an Answer, so he went to *Galazy*, and told his Message: The Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels aboard, she said unto her Seneshal. Go and receive the Tribute due to me of the Merchant, and take along with you a sufficient Company of Soldiers, lest they should offer you any Injury. He did as he was commanded, and coming to the Ships, they found inestimable Gems; in-much that they were Ravished therewith: So they taking the Value of the Tribute due to the Lady, suddenly the Christians that lay hid in the Ship set upon them, and Slew them. Then *Valentine* said unto them, except we go forward in this Enterprize, we shall never gain the Castle: Wherefore he caused fifty of his Men to put on the Sarazens Gowns over their Armour,

and so laiding themselves with Silk and precious Stones, took their way to the Castle. The Porter tyed up the Lyons, let down the draw-bridge, and thirsting after some reward, went beyond his bounds inso much as Valentine led him to the Ships: Being come, Valentine shewed him their dead Bodys, and said: I will make you like one of these if you give me not passage into this Castle: Sir (quoth the Porter) I shall do it: Why then (qd. Valentine) I will reward thee: Come, said the Porter, and bring all these Men whom you have Clad in the Habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, and let them enter one by one, which they did: So being entred, the Porter shewed them a secret Postern, which Valentine having gotten, caused all the Doors to be set open, then winded he his Horn, at which all those in the Ship, hasted unto them. Then he entered the Chamber of the Lady *Galaxy*, who was astonished thereat; but he said: Lady, fear not, for I have ventur'd the Seas to have a sight of your Royal Presence. Then she beid him welcome, and highly feasted him. Valentine's Men having entered the Castle, with their shouts so affrighted the Lady, that in weeping manner she said unto him: Courteous Kt. save my Virginity. Lady, qd. he, fear not, for there is none that dares to attempt any Dishonour towards your Person, By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, and Valentine hastning unto the Dungeon, did break it open, and cryed out aloud: All you that be alive come forth. Orson knowing his voice, replied: Brother you are welcome, how came you heither? Valentine said, I am come to set you at Liberty. at these words the Emperor fell into a swoond, but Orson suddenly recovered him: Then they came out of the Dungeon in Ragged Cloaths, and ill coloured Faces; but the Christians revelled for the Space of 7. Days in the Castle; and Orson falling in love with *Galaxy*. after the Death of *Fezan*, Married her, by whom he had a Son, named *Orson*, who after had the Empire of *Constantinople*.

These affairs being thus brought to an End, and Council was called, what was best to be done: At last they resolved to leave a Garrison to resist the Enemy: Some said it was fitting that *Hausfray* and *Henry* should undertake this task: But *Hausfray* replied, not we, for we are determin'd to go into *France*, to serve our Father. Quoth Orson, if you be so resolved, we have small reason to weep for your departure; for there is nothing but Treason in you. At these words *Hausfray* and *Henry* were displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was Resolved that the Emperor should take his rest; and his Son *Orson*, and the *Green Kt.* should Remain there, to defend the Castle, whilst Valentine and the Rest address'd themselves for *Angoy*. Now will we look into the Treason of *Hausfray* and *Henry*, who being come into *France*, laid a Plot to take away the Life of their Father, and little

Charles his Son, with *Bertha* the Queen. Being come to *Paris*, the King Royally feasted them, and after demanded what News of the Emperor, *Valentine*, *Orson*, and the Rest? Quoth the Traytors, they were all slain in a Battle at *Angory*, at which the King waxed wonderful sad. After this, they poysoned the King and Queen. Now little *Charles* was still living, who, as the Gods would have it, hapned under the safe keeping of *Myllon Daugler*.

The King and Queen being both treacherously poysoned, the two Traytors seemed to be exceeding sorrowful, but *D. Myllon* being a man of a valiant and couragious Spirit, forth-with caused a Counsel to be holden, wherein he would have Crowned young *Charles* K. of *France*, but *Haufray* and *Henry*, by Bribs so corrupted the Lords, that *Charles* was held too young. Hereupon *D. Myllon* was committed to Prison for standing on the Childs part, and *Charles* held as a Kitching-boy.

A little after it hapned, that *Haufray* commanded *Charles* to turn a Spit, but the Boy being full of Majesty, took up the Spit, and fell'd him to the Earth. At this out steps *Henry*, thinking to smite the Child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him such a box on the Ear, that Blood issued out at his Mouth. Then *Haufray* commanded his men to lay hold on him, but there came a Kt. which took *Charles* by the Hand, and conveyed him to *Paris*. The Traytors perceiving *Charles* was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. *D. Myllon* told his Wife thereof, who was Sister to *Charles*, the Lady could not behold the same for Tears, but vowed that they should dearly pay for these Treasons, and forthwith caused Letters to be sent into *Angory* unto *Valentine*, and the 12 Peers of *France*. These Letters came first into the Hands of *Valentine*, who could not chuse but weep at this Act of Villany. The Lords perceiving his Tears, asked the Cause: He answered, Kt. *Pepin* and the Queen are dead, and as for *Charles*, the two accursed Brothers, *Haufray* and *Henry*, have chased him out of his Country, imprison'd *D. Myllon*, and all that held on young *Charles*'s side: These are the Contents of the Letters, and the Lady that sendeth them, Requireth help to Apprehend these Rebels. These sad Tydings put them to their wits end, and lying between to extreame knew not which way to take, for *Brandiffer* was daily expected with an Army of many thousands: At last *Valentine* said, e'er to Morrow Night I will set free *D. Myllon*, or else my Skill shall deceive me: At which they all laughed heartily. *Valentine* departed, and with *Paclet*'s Horse he suddenly arrived at *Paris*, where by his Art he opened the Gates, and released all the Prisoners, and being shewed the Chamber where *D. Myllon* was he entered the same, who being fast asleep, he awaked him, and said, Sir, I am *Valentine*, which am come to set you free. Then he

he mounted him on his Horse, and bid him not speak, for he was to Pass through the Air. The D. prayed him to pass by the Castle of *Angier*, that he might but see his Wife, which he did, and being come to the Lady, who presently Ran and kissed him, demanding of him whither he went? Lady, qd. he, I go to Fight against the Infidels, to bring home the 12 Peers of France, with an Army to overthrow *Haufray* and *Henry*, and to succour *Charles*. Having refresh'd themselves with Meat, they set forth towards *Hungary*: Being come, they came before all the Barrons, who were much astonished at *Valentine's* Art, greatly desiring to learn it, but he would teach it no Man: Now was *Brandiffer* with his Host, come within a Mile of *Angory*, and there planted his Siege. The Citizens hearing hereof, shut up their Gates, drew up their Bridges, and after got on the Walls, lying a Month together without making Resistance. The Emp. hearing that *Brandiffer* had begirt *Angory* with so huge an Army, resolv'd to leave the strong Castle to the Guard of a Kt. so the Emperor *Orson*, and the *Green Knight* took Shipping accompanied with 1000 Souldiers: Being at Sea, they saw a great Fleet of Ships comming to them, and at last they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men going to the succour of *Brandiffer*: The Christians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, so that their chanced a Bloody Battle: Great valour was shown on both sides, but they knew not whether the Victory would incline. At last the Pagan Admiral encountering a Christian Kt. tumbled him over Shipboard: *Orson* standing by him grew angry; and taking his Axe, struck him stark Dead. This deed discouraged the Pagans, that they with-drew themselves all that Night, they having lost 15 large Ships, and 400 Men. Then the Emperor said: Lords, let us Arm our selves with such Weapons as here we have seized from the Pagans, which they presently did, but this Enterprize was fatal, for the Emp. was slain by his own Son *Valentine*, who took him for an Infidel, as hereafter you shall hear. But here they hoise Sail a gain, and at last arrived in *Angory*.

After a Months siege, *Valentine* sent a Defiance to *Brandiffer*, offering him Battel: The Christians divided their Battel in 10 Squadrons, whereof D. *Myllon* was their General: The 2. *Sampson* of *Orleance*: The 3. Earl of *Vandsom*. The 4. Earl of *Campagne*. The 5. *Quintine* of *Norm*. The 6. the D. of *Burgoyne*: The 7. the Earl of *Dampmartin*. The 8. the Earl of *Afferve*. The 9. the Marshal of *Constantinople*. The 10. *Valentine*, who added Courage to all the Rest. Being in order, they issaed out of the City, to assail *Brandiffer*, who had devided his Army into 12 Squadrons, and the Squadron which had the least commander, was a K. At the joyning of these Battels, a certain Pagan, that never had

been in Wars, couched his Spear in his rest, and would be the foremost Man, but *Valentine* to cool his Pride, ran against him, and struck him down Dead: then they fell to it pell mell, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly, and the *Indian King* entering the Battle, made very much slaughter: But *Valentine* missing him, gave him such a Counter-buff, that he set him beside his Horse.

At this present the Christians got the better, and caused the Infidels to give ground, but there came in a Sarazens Captain with 3000 Men, and continued the Battle hotter then before, By this time *K. Lucar* lighted on the *Indian K.* and lent him succour: Now the Christians began to retire, so that they had been forced to a shameful Flight, had not two valiant *Kts.* named *Reynord* of *Province*, and *Myllon* of *Dyon*, arrived in *Angory*, with 700 Men at Arms (the which lately had come from the Holy Sepulchre, and suffered much Misery) entered the Field: one of them brought into *France* the Daughter of a rich Admiral, called *Claridina*, and caused her to be Baptized. At their approach the Pagans were much discomfited, for *Myllon* of *Dyon* at his first Encounter, smote *K. Lucar* stark Dead, and at the next another *K.* called *Rubres*, which much amazed *Brandiffer*. At another part of the Battle rushed in *Raynord*, and slew many of them. *Valentine* wondred at these two *Kts.* of Chivalry, and coming toward them, said, Lords, you are welcome, I pray what are you, or by what chance came you hither: Friend, (quoth *Raynord*) we are Lords of *France*, and lately come from the Holy Sepulchre, who hearing of these Wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. Quoth *Valentine*, once again heartily welcome; for *Myllon Daugler* is here and all the Peers of *France*: So they joyntly rushed afresh into the Battle. All this while the *Indian K.* had a spleen at *Valentine*, for his last disgrace, and finding him out, accompanied with three other Kings, they so encountered *Valentine*, that they did smite him and his Horse to the Ground: Being down, he quickley recovered; and drawing his Sword, defended himself there with: But with much danger. At last Duke *Myllon*, *Sirapson*, and *Gervis*, came unto his Succour, getting a fresh Horse for him: *Valentine* being mounted, made his Course against the *Indian King* again, and striking him down, took away his Shield, which he kept for he had lost his own.) This ended, Tydings came that a great Fleet of Sarazens was coming near unto the Haven: Hereupon *Valentine* said, Lords, let us presently go strengthen the Passages. So *Valentine*, and *D. Myllon* of *Dyon*, went to the Heaven; but these were all Friends and Christians, amongst whom was his Father the Emperor of *Greece*, of whom you shall hear more. The Emperor having landed his Men, *Kal.* saluted him with his Spear in his Rest? the Emperor (who bare the Shield of a Sarazen unknow) encountered

countered with his Son : At last *Valen*, ran his Spear quite through his Father's Body, that he fell down Dead. His Father being Dead. he said, *Mon-joy vive Greece*. *Orson* seeing his Father dead, did weep, and said, Brother, there is small conquest in this ; for you have slain your Father : When he heard him say so, he fell in Extasie from his Horse : To this Lamentation of the two Brothers. came *Rey. of Prov.* and *Myl. of Dyon*, to comfort them, saying Knights, have patience, for tears cannot recall them ; *Alas !* said *Valen*. what have I done ? it were happy for me, if Death would take me from this World ; I have committed a fact, detestable both to God and Men : O ! what will become of me ? my Life have I passed away in troubles, torments and cares, and now to add more Sorrow to my Days, I have shed the Blood of my dear Father. Brother *Orson* take my Sword, and cut off my Head, that the Earth may not bear so Bloody a Butcher. Brother said *Orson*, depart not thus, but repent, and no doubt but you shall be forgiven : So comforting him in this manner, at last they got him to his Horse, whereon being mounted, he ran through the Pagan Troops so furiously, that all they that stood in his way perished. Now began the Battle to encrease, and King *Christo* slew the Christians on every side. At last *Valentine* meeting him, gave him such a canvasada, that he pierced his Body quite through. In this Battle *D. Myllon of Dyon*, and *Reynard of Province*, rushed so fierce into the Battle of the Enemy that they were taken Prisoners : Yet not withstanding their adverse fortunes, they got their Liberties once again, and made *Charles K. of France*, with Honour and joy, to the destruction of *Haufray* and *Henry*, the two notable Traytors : Yet was not this fierce, long and tedious Battle ended, for they stood it out manfully on either side. *Valen*. being careless of life, at last met with *Brandisser*, who encountred each other so fiercely that both fell to the Earth : But *Valentine* suddenly recovering himself, took the *K.* such a Blow, that he clave his Head. *K. Baumann* seeing his Brother slain, went out of the Field with the Admiral of *Cordes*. and *K. Josieth*, who caused a retreat to be sounded : The Christians following, slew many thousands, and others leapt into the Sea, and drowned themselves. So the Night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City : next morning, burying the Dead, there was great lamentation for the Emperor of *Greece*. Then his Body was royally interred in the City of *Angory*, but *Valentine* could not be comforted. The Pagans being thus twice put to the worst before *Angory*, Duke *Myllon* took his leave of *Valentine*, to return into *France*, saying, *Valentine*, I would I could return as swiftly back, as you brought me hither, Friend (said *Valentine*) I would I had never known the Art ; For it hath brought nothing but shame, and vexation on me, and him an untimely Death that taught it me ; so that *D. Myllon* departed. *Valen-*

tine and Orson intended to go for Greece; but before their departure, they crowned the *Green Knight*, King of *Angory*. After leave taken, Orson called the *Fair Galazy* to him, and said, Love, I know you are with Child by me, yet I cannot Wed you, for that I have a nother Wife; but before I go, I will make certain Lands over to you, for your maintenance that you may hereafter live of your self. All these offers she denied, but said, she would go to Sea with him, and after confine me to some Religious House, wherein I may spend the residue of my Days. Agreed (qd. Orson) and so he took her with him to *Constantinople*. Being come thither, they send word to the Empress of their Father's Death, but concealed by whom it was done: The Lady was sorrowful for her Husband, but joyed at the sight of her Children, so did all the City, making great Triumphs for their return. The Empress being at Dinner, said unto her Sons: It must be agreed betwixt you who shall be Emperor. Orson replied, it appertaineth not to me to take the first place: Brother let it be as I say, for I am beholden to you, you nothing to me: Therefore take the Empire, and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should joyntly Govern, but *Valentine* continued not long in that state of Dignity; for shortly after on a Morning, he called to him *Clerimond*, and said thus unto her: Understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my Conscience remaineth still troubled for that fact, and I am minded to go on Pilgrimage: Commend me to my Mother, and to my Brother Orson, both which I charge you not to see, till fifteen Days be passed over, and then give them this Letter; all which the Lady must consent to, although in Tears.

Chap. XLI. *How Valentine took leave of Clerimond before his Pilgrimage. How King Hugon demanded Clerimond for his Wife, how he betrayed Orson, and the Green Knight: How Gale- ran delivered Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous Lamentations they made: How Bellissant and Clerimond came to know of King Hugon's Treason: How Galetan lost his Head, and how Orson and the Green Knight were set free.*

Then *Valentine* said Lady, cease your tears, and gieve me your Wedding Ring: She having done so, he break it in two pieces, keeping the one half, and giving her the other: Saying, my Love, keep thy half, and whatsoever you hear, believe nothing, till you see this other half, which I possess: At these words he embraced her, and wept bitterly, so departed, only one Page with him: Having long travelled, at last he came to *Rome*, there coming into the presence of a Hermet, he confessed the Death of his Father; the Hermet seeing him so penitent, enjoined him penance: first change thy habit, and go barely cloathed, and 7-years lye under the stairs of thy palace, without speaking any words; thou shalt nither eat or Drink,

but

but of the Scraps that come from thine own Table; do this, and fear not thy Sins: Sir, said *Valentine*, all this I will do: So after he had dined, he departed, without speaking to his Servant; after this he entered into a Wood, feeding upon Roots; and he continued there so long, that he was forgotten amongst men. *Orson* having now read the Letter that *Clerimond* delivered him. wept bitterly, insomuch as the Lady said unto him: Brother, cease your lament: Alas! said *Orson*, I have great cause; for this Letter sheweth, that my Brother will never return: Hereat the Lady



frowned, and recovering her self, she said, why hath my love hid his intent from me? But all her sorrow could not call him home again: News was spread through the City, that *Valentine* would never return: *Clerimond* wailed, *Bellefant* complained, and *Orson* sighed: Now the Lady *Faxon* hearing *Orson* had got another Lady with Child, she died with grief. Being dead, *Orson* made a years solemnity of her Funeral, and after married *Gatazy*, of whom you have heard before.

Now I will shew you how *Valentine* came back to *Constantinople* in beggarly Weeds, insomuch that he was not known, going from House to House a begging: At last he went into his Brother's Palace, about supper-

time.

time, and those that waited at the Table, beat him away : *Orf.* seeing them so churlish, bad them let him alone, for I am willing all poor Men should be Relieved, for my Brother *Valen.* his sake, that so we may hear Tydings of him : After this, they brought him meat and wine ; but he espying a Basket, wherein the Scraps were put, eat thereof, which amazed the Beholders : Night being come, the Servitors asked *Orf.* if he would let that counterfeit abide in his Palace : Ay (qd *Orf.*) for it may be for some vow which he hath made : Thus abode *Val.* and made his bed of straw under the Stairs. On the Morrow *Orf.* passing by, gave him mony, after came his Mother, and his Wife *Clerim.* and they gave him mony, saying, how can you endure this nakedness ? this Night you shall have Cloaths provided for you : they being gone, he gave his mony to two poor men standing by him, who scoffed at him for his Labour : Next Day at Dinner, they gave him variety of meats, which he refused, and made signs for the Alms Basket : *Orf.* to try him further, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it : Then said *Orf.* surely this is some vow he hath made to the Gods : Thus did *Valen.* remain within the Palace, without being known, that all men thought him dead : In these Days there was a K. of *Hungaria*, named *Hugon*, who heard that *Valen.* had given over the Empire of *Greece* to his Brother *Orson.* this *Hugon* came to *Constanti.* and was honourably received. After his arrival, he came to the Lady *Clerim.* and said, I am King of *Hunga.* and have no Wife and for that purpose I am come hither to crave your love ; I know that *Valen* is dead, or else that he will never return : Dear Lady grant me thy love, and thou shalt be Q. of *Hunga.* Sir (qd. the Lady) I thank you for your kingly proffer, but to be your Wife I cannot ; for sure my *Valen.* liveth, and for 7 years I will every Day expect his return : besides, when I make joyce of a Husband, my Brother *Orf.* and the *Green Kt.* must know ; for without their lieve I will never marry. Then he went towards *Orf.* and demanded of him, if he heard any News from his Brother, Great K. (qd *Orf.*) no, but he left me a Letter, and certified me, that he is gone to exile, and bareth aboute him the half Ring he was married withal ; the other half he left with his Wife, charging her, that she believe nothing of him, till she see the other half which he possessed. The Gods be his good speed, qd. *Hugon*, for he was a worthy Kt. But one thing qd. *Hugon*, have I more to acquaint you with ; I am determin'd to take a journey to *Jerusalem*, to visit the Holy Shrine, so you would bare me company. With all my Heart, qd. *Orf.* but let us go to *Angory*, and take with us the *Green Kt.* who is King thereof : It shall be so qd. *Hugon* : So *Orf.* taking leave of his Mother, and his Wife *Galazy*, came to *Angory* and was received with great joy. Having feasted there, they took their way to *Jerusalem* : Being come into the City

City, while they were beholding divers Monuments, *Hugon* stole away from them to the K. of *Jury*, and said ; I have a Message to deliver worth your attention. There is newly arrived here 2 worthy Kts. that are your greatest Enemies, for they slew K. *Brandiffer*, K. *Lucar*, and your Brother K. of *Indie* : When *Rabestre* heard all that he could say, he was sorry for the Death of his Brother, and said to *Hugon* : Can you deliver me these two Kts? Yea, said the Traytor, so you will give me their Gold Seals : Sir, qd he, them and much more will I give you : Then hearken, fend to the Patriach's House, and he will tell you where they are : The King sent out 800 armed Men, and found them at Dinner, then they took them and brought them to the King : False Enemies, qd. the K. to our Lives and Religion, my Heart even leapeth for joy that I have got you, tell me what is your Names? my Name is *Orson*, and this is the *Green Kt.* You are the Men I look for, and there is another called *Valentine*, had I him also, I would use you all a-like then he caused their Seals to be taken away, and given to *Hugon*, and they to be cast into a Dungeon, and be fed only with Bread and Water : Now all this while they knew not what was become of *Hugon* ; for they thought he were slain by the Sarazens, while he was plotting with a nother Traitor in the City, called *Galaran*, and began thus to salute him ; *Galaran*, my desire is to imploy you secretly in a matter of import, and I will reward the sufficiently ; Uncle (qd. *Gal.*) fear me not, I know your drift, you would obtain fair *Clerimond*? True said *Hugon*, therefore let us write a Letter in the Name of *Orson*, and we will Seal it with his Seal, and the Letter shall be thus framed.

'*Orson*, by the power of the Gods, Emperor of *Greece*, unto the thrice Renowned Sovereign Lady my Mother, unto you my Love *Galazy*, and my Sister *Clerimond*, greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, Requiring nothing but patience ; Ladies, know that I found my Brother *Valentine* on his Death-bed at *Jerusalem*, and a little before his last Gasp, he charged me to salute *Clerimond*, in his Name, and command her that if ever she marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband ; the cause why he sent not the half Ring, was, for that it was stolen from him in his Sickness.

This Letter thus finished, *Hugon* wrote another Letter ; saying :

'Right well-beloved Sister, we have said enough about my Brother *Valentine*, but now we wish you, for the great Beauty wherewith you are adorned, first to accomplish the desire of the Dead ; secondly, to encrease your Honour, we advise you to match with *Hugon* King of *Hungary*, as you will avoid our displeasure. And for further Authority, we have sealed these Letters with our own Seals. Again know, that we cannot yet Re-

turn, for great Wars is fallen between the Infidels and Christians. So we leave you to the tuition of the Gods.

These Letters being sealed, *Hugon* gave them to *Galeran* to bear to *Constantinople*, himself followed after: By this means thinking to get the Lady? *Galeran* being in *Constantinople* delivered his Letters to the Lady *Bellifant*, who commanded that he should be highly feasted. Afterward she call'd one to Read them, and *Valentine* lying in the Hall heard the contents thereof: Being Read, the Ladys grew exceeding sorrowful for the Death of *Valentine*, but especially the Lady *Clerimond*, pittiously lamenting his misfortunes, saying: How unhappy amongst Women am I? Alas *Valentine*, why went I not with thee, to see thy Body lade up safe in the Earth? unkind Brother and the *Green Knight*, Why are you two such Enemies, as to wish me to marriage so soon after *Valentine's* Death, seeing I have lost such a Noble, magnanimous, and loving Kt. the Mirrow of Chivalry, the Rose of Honour, the example of Courtesie, and the Patron of Truth? Death, hast thou not one Dart left to shoot at this poor Breast? For seeing my Life is nothing but sorrow, I will never have other Husband, but in sorrow will I spend the rest of my Days; all this did *Valentine* behold; which he pittied; but fearing to be known, he buried it in silence? *Bellifant* seeing *Clerimond* thus violent, said: Daughter, be patient he was my Son, and I sorrow for him at my Heart, but when I consider he cannot be fetched back, therewith I pass it over, and rather think on what your Brother, and my Son *Orson* doth advise you unto; good Mother (qd the Lady) say no more, for I shall never marry, and therewith went weeping to her Chamber, and *Valentine* lay under the stairs, musing how these Treasons should come about. Some four Days after, *K. Hugon* came to *Constantinople*, and was received with great Honour; but *Clerimond* shewed him no favour: Being there he said unto the Empress: You understand of the Death of your Son, for whom I am sorry: But it is agreed upon that I shall marry the Lady: Sir, qd. *Clerimond*, I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: All this Treason *Valentine* heard; but in the End, the matter was so urged, that *Hugon* had the Lady which much encreased his joys, but they were short.

Valentine having ended his Orisons to the Gods, the Oracle made answer to him thus: *Valentine* get the out of the City, and without the Gates is a Pilgrim, put on his Weec, having them on, get the to thy Palace, and there before all comemers reveal the Treason practised against thy Love, for in this disguise thou canst not be known: *Valentine* comming to the Court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladys, and amongst them was the Traytor *Hugon*, even he that uttered such Reproachful Words against *Valen*. Now *Valentine* came to *Bellifant*, saying; Lady I beseech you shew me the Wife of

of *Valentine*, I would fain do a message to her: Wouldst thou? said the Lady I am she thou desirest to see; Then thus, I have lately seen thy Love *Valen.* that sendeth salutations, willing me to say, that within three Days he will be with you. Pilgrim (qd. the Lady) advise well thy self what thou speakest, for I heard my Love is Dead; Lady (qd. the Pilgrim) believe it not, for I protest to deliver my Body to Death, if it be not true what I have said: *Hugon* hearing these words related to the Ladies, secretly mounted his Horse, and never returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were amazed at the Pilgrims Tale, and offered to feast him, but he would not, only he said to them: Ladies pardon me, I pray, for I have certain Companions in the Town which I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: Yet *Clerimond* would gratifie him for his News, giving him mony, which he bountifully bestowed again upon the Servants. Presently after it was demanded, what was become of King *Hugon*? A Damosel standing by, said, I saw him just now take Horse; but where he is I know not.

Upon these Words *Galeran* came in; and they asked him what was become of his Uncle *Hugon*? who making no Reply, *Bellisant* grew enraged, and said, you shall not escape till you have related the Treason *Hugon* hath practised against us. Then *Galeran* said, Lady have mercy on me, and I shall tell you all. say on I pardon thee. My Uncle is guilty of Treason, and has sold to the Pagans, the Emperor, *Orson*, and the *Green Knight*. Which tale fore daunted the assembly, but *Galeran* was presently hanged. Then *Valentine* leaving the habit of a Pilgrim, returned again to the Palace; *Clerimond* espying him, said poor Man! Where have you been? Methinks you seem displeased, because I said I will not marry? *Valentine* replied not at all, but left her; yet she not contented at his dejection, caused a costly Quilt to be brought for him to lodg upon, but he refused.

K. Jary having *Orson* and the *Green Knight* in hold, caused them to be brought before him, and said unto them: Lords you see, you are at my mercy, wherefore I vow you shall never escape with life, except you will resign back unto me the City of *Angory*. *Orson* replied, we will never consent hereunto: except you give King *Hugon* unto us; The King said unto them, speak nothing of him, for he is the Traytor that delivered you into my Hands, and he hath your Seals: *Orson* and the *Green Kr.* marvelled much thereat, and swore they would be Revenged on him.

Now it fell out, that these Prisoners were content to yield to the King's command, and so returned to *Const.* Being come home *Clerimond* told him, that she had heard Tydings of *Valentine*, which rejoyced *Orson*, who lying with his Wife that Night, got a Son called *Adorant*, who after Ruled *Angory*. Not long after *Orson* raised an host of Men to go for *Angory*, which

which when *Hugon* heard, he offered him the same City, and foure Horfe-load of Gold, and if any there durst call him Traytor (*Orson* excepted) he would Fight with him; the *Green Kt.* accepted his Challenge; so arming themselves, the *Green Knight* came first into the List. All things set in order they Encountred each other with their Spears, next with their Swords, at last the *Green Kt.* gave *Hugon* such a Stroak on his Helm, that he cut part of his Head, even off at his Shoulders; so that he fell into a Swound, thus was the *Green Kt.* Conqueror; *Hugon* reviving again, desired a Confessor, and unfolding the Treason, dyed in the Place; *Orson* never the less caused his Body to be Sumptuously interred. At last *Hugon's* Treason, being blown abroad, they tendered the City to the Emp. *Orson*; This being ended, they returned into *Constantinople*; But *Clerimond* marvelled she heard not of *Valentine*.

Chap XLII How at the end of 7 years, Valentine Dyed in the Palace of Constantinople, & how Orson turned Hermet;

AT the end of 7 Years, *Valentine* fell into a mortal Disease, whereof he dyed. Before his Death an Angel appeared to him, saying, *Valentine* thy Glas is Run, for within 4 hours thou shalt Dye: Whereat he greatly Rejoyced, making signs for Pen, Ink, and Paper: When he had it, he Wrote that it was himself that appeared like a Pilgrim, and discovered the Treason; After pating to it his Name, he closed up the Paper, putting in the other half of the Ring that he had kept: Shortly after he laid him down and Dyed. When *Orson* saw that he was Dead, he was troubled in mind. The poor Man being Dead, held a Letter in his Hand, which *Orson* would have taken out, but he could not, then came *Clerimond*, and as soon as she laid hold thereon, the Hand opened it self. *Clerimond* breaking up the Letter, and knowing the half Ring, said, Lords, we shall hear news of *Valentine*: So a Secretary was called to Read it, at the Reading hereof, great Lamentations was made, but especially by *Clerimond*, who falling on the dead Body, said: Alas I have lost all my Joy, Comfort, and Hopes, for that my Love should dye so near my Person, and I not know of it; Now great preparations was made for his Funeral Rites; he was interred in great magnificence in *Constantinople*; *Clerimond* afterward betook to her to a single life. Thus having shown the Death of *Valentine*, and what became of *Clerimond*: Let us return to *Orson*, who ruled the Empire of *Constantinople* seven years, and by his second Wife *Galazy*, he had a Son named *Morant*, who afterwards was King of *Angory*.

After 7 years were expired, *Galazy* dyed, for whom *Orson* was exceeding sorrowful, and in the end, betook him to the Woods, feeding on breed and roots.

It happened one Night, that he saw a vision, it seemed to him more glorious than his Tongue could utter. After this vision he awaked, and being astonished hereat, with Tears he came to the *Green Kt.* and said: Sir, I see the uncertainty of the World, for which I am willing to resign my Estate and Children unto you: see them well educated, that they may be fit to govern such a People for I will spend the rest of my Days in solatary contemplation: When the *Green Kt.* heard these words, he wept bitterly. But Orson recomforted him, saying: Weep not; but pray for me, as I for you, that you may accomplish that which I put you in trust withal. So taking his way towards a Wood, he there spent the remainder of his Days. The *Green Kt.* after so governed his Children, that they carefully spent their time on Earth, and followed their Father to his Grave. *F I N I S.*

T H E T A B L E.

- Chap. I. **H**OW King Pepin banished his Queen Bertha; and how he gave his Sister Bellifant in Marriage to Alexander, Emperor of Constantinople.
- Chap. II. How the Arch Priest of Constantinople betrayed the Emperor, his Lord and Master, in making love to fair Bellifant the Empress; and what evil followed thereupon. The Arch-priest having received a repulse of Bellifant, to save his own Honour, practised Treason against the Innocent Lady.
- Chap. III. How the Arch-priest put on the habit of a Knight of Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress Bellifant, who was lately banished. How Bellifant, in her Banishment, was Delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were Valentine and Orson, and how she lost them.
- Chap. IV. Of the Bear that bore away one of the Children.
- Chap. V. How, by the Counsel of the Arch-priest, new Customs. and Taxations were raised through the City of Constantinople; and how the Treason came to light. How the Emperor, by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for King Pepin, to see the Combate Fought between the Arch-priest and the Merchant.
- Chap. VI. How the Merchant, and Arch-priest encountered at the place appointed, about the Clearing the Lady Bellifant, and what a glorious victory did beride the Merchant. How King Pepin, after the Combate, returned into France; and after sailed to Rome, to fight the Sarazens that had surprized the City.
- Chap. VII. How King Pepin, besieged Rome; and how Valentine Fought with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved and won again from the Sarazens.

THE TABLE.

- Chap. VIII. *How Haufray and Henry repined at the love the King did shew towards Valentine.*
- Chap. IX. *How Valentine Conquered his Brother Orson (the wild Man in the Forrest of Orleance) and afterwards departed from the Forrest, with Orson, towards Orleance, wherein King Pepin was resident.*
- Chap. X. *How Haufray and Henry took Counsel together, to Murther Valentine, in the Chamber of Eglantine. And how Duke Savary sent unto King Pepin, for aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his Will.*
- Chap. XI. *How divers Knights arrived at Aquitain, at a solemn Just there holden to bear away the Love of the Beautious Lady Fezon. How Haufray and Henry, accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away the Life of Valentine.*
- Chap. XII. *How Orson and Grygar fought together, and How Orson returning victor, caused Grygar to confess the Treason, who was after hanged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon.*
- Chap. XIII. *How Orson Encountered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof; also how Valentine attempted to Fight with him, but could not overcome him.*
- Cap. XIV. *How Valentine took Advice and sent Orson on the Morrow, to Fight the Green Knight; and how Orson overcome him.*
- Chap. XV. *How Orson having Conquered the Green Knight, Valentine caused him to be Christned, and sending him to King Pepin, &c.*
- Chap. XVI. *How King Pepin came to know that Valentine and Orson were his Nephews; how the Green Knight submitted himself according to his promise.*
- Chap. XVII. *How King Pepin departed from France towards Greece, to bear these Tydings; how he found Constantinople besieged by the Souldan of Egypt; how the Green Knight Justed with two Sarazens and overcome them, of the Battel that was fought, and the Armies entering the City.*
- Chap. XVIII. *How Valentine and Orson arrived at the strong Castle wherein fair Clerimond was; and how by the Brazen-head, they had knowledge of their Parents.*
- Chap. XIX. *How (when as Valentine was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) Clerimond bewailed the Love of Valentine: And how he Justed for the Entrances, and overcome the Seneshal,*
- Chap. XX. *How Valentine shewed Clerimond her Brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen-head, which told him from whence he was descended.*

T H E T A B L E.

- Chap. XXI. *How the Gyant Ferragus had knowledge of all that past, betwixt his Sister and Valentine, by the means of one Pacolet a Dwarf and an Enchanter.*
- Chap. XXII. *How Pacolet hereupon made another expeditious Journey into Portugal, to see the Lady Bellifant, Valentine's Mother; his return back, and the News that he brought.*
- Chap. XXIII. *How Valentine and Orson were betrayed by the Treachery of Ferragus; and how he committed them to Prison, with their woeful Lamentation.*
- Chap. XXIV. *How Pacolet the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.*
- Chap. XXV. *How by Art Pacolet set free Valentine and Orson from the Prison of Ferragus, and conducted them, with their Mother and fair Clerimond.*
- Chap. XXVI. *How Valentine and Orson escaped the Castle of Ferragus and sailed with the two Ladies into Aquitain.*
- Chap. XXVII. *How King Ferragus assembled all his Men of War, to take Revenge upon Valentine, and his Sister Clerimond, and how he followed them into Aquitain.*
- Chap. XXVIII. *How the Duke of Aquitain was taken Prisoner in the Battel by Ferragus, and how Orson set him free by the help of Pacolet.*
- Chap. XXIX. *How Orson tryed the Constancy of the Lady Fezon, before he Married her.*
- Chap. XXX. *How Ferragus the Gyant strengthened his Forces by the Aid of King Trompart, and the Enchanter Adrimain.*
- Chap. XXXI. *Of the pittiful Tale the Empress made to Valentine her Son, before his farewell into Constantinople, and what Speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.*
- Chap. XXXII. *How Valentine and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners in the Battel of Constantinople, by the Souldan Moradin and his Men.*
- Chap. XXXIII. *How Pacolet by Enchantment, delivered Valentine and the Green Knight out of the Bondage of the Souldan; and how Pacolet couzened the Souldan when he had him upon his Horse, &c.*
- Chap. XXXIV. *How King Trompart came before Aquitain, to succour Ferragus, and brought with him Adrimain the Enchanter, who betray'd Pacolet, &c.*
- Chap. XXXV. *How King Pepin took leave of the Emperor at his Departure from Greece, and how Orson went along with him. how Garnier fainting, left the Knife in the Bed, and accused Orson falsely of Treason, and how the knife was found in the King's Bed. And how Orson claimed Combat against his Accusers, when they would have adjudged him: and it was (by the twelve peers of France) granted. And how Valentine, in seeking Clerimond, arrived at Antioch, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end slew the Dragon. And how Valentine, after the Conquest of the Dragon, caused the King of Antioch, and all his Land to be Baptized, and of the Lawless*

THE TABLE.

Love of the Queen Rozamond. And how the King of Antioch was put to Death for Renouncing his Mahometry, by King Brandiffier, his Wifes Father, And how the Emperor of Greece, and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners by Brandiffier.

Chap. XXXVI. *How Clerimond after the Year was past, feigned her self Mad. because she would not wed the King of Indie: And of Lucar that would revenge the Death of his Father King Trompart, upon the King of Indie: How King Lucar in the City of Esclariana wedded Rozamond, the fair Daughter of Brandiffier: How Valentine departed from Esclardy, to brach out defiance; of the Answer he brought from the Indian King; how Rozamond found away to be taken, and led unto the Indian King: How King Lucar caused Brandiffier to stay with him, and sent Valentine into Angory against King Pepie, &c.*

Chap. XXXVII. *How Valentine returned back to Indie, after the Battel, and bare with him the dead Body of King Murgalant: How he heard Tydings of his Father: how Pacolet freed the Indian King, and left Brandiffier in Prison: how King Lucar caused all that hundred that watched the Indian, to be drawn to Death at Horses Tail: &c.*

Chap. XXXVIII. *How Valentine and Pacolet came before the Castle: how Pacolet raised up the Devil to ask his Counsel about the taking of the Castle: how Brandiffier brought the Twelve Peers of France into his strong Castle, and imprisoned them: how he beseged the City of Angory, And how Brandiffier having knowledge that Lucar was Captive in Angory, made mean to Valentine to deliver him upon sufficient Ransom.*

Chap. XXXIX. *How Myllon Daugler (who was taken for the King of France) was delivered out of Prison in lieu of King Lucar: how Valentine and the Duke of Myllon issued out of Angory, and won the Battel from the Sarazens: how K. Pepin was delivered in charge for the King of Indie's Marshal, left Angory, and returned into France, to succour his Wife.*

Chap. XL. *How Valentine under the Shape of a Physician, went into Indie, to see and speak with the said Clerimond: how Valentine rod away with her; how the King of Brittain was given to King Pepin by Treason; how Valentine took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor and all the rest of the Prisoners, how the Emperor, Orson and the Green Knight kept a strong Garrison in the Castle; how Haufray and Henry compassed the Death of their Father, how the Emperor of Greece, Orson, and the Green Knight left the Castle, and came, to the succour of Valentine in Angory: how the Christians issued out of the City of Angory, and bid Battel to the Sarazens; how Valentine ignorantly slew his Father: And how Myllon Daugler returned into France, and Valentine and Orson into Greece.*

Chap. XLI. *How Valentine took leave of Clerimond before his Pilgrimage: How King Hugon demanded Clerimond for his Wife, how he betrayed Orson and the Green Knight: How Galestan delivered Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous Lamentations they made: How Bellifant and Clerimond came to know of King Hugon's Treason: How Galestan lost his Head, and how Orson and the Green Knight were set free.*

Chap. XLII. *How at the end of 7 years, Valentine dyed in the Palace of Constantinople, and how Orson turned Hermit.*

FINIS.

ADVERTISEMENT.

T Here is brought from Chili, a most Excellent natural Balsam, 'tis a Remedy no Man under the Sun can compose. It cures all pain coming from cold pains in the Stomach: 'tis also good for all Bruises or Ulcers of the Lungs, Reins, Bladder or Womb. It helps shortness of Breath, Cough, Consumption, Falling Sickness, Apoplexy, Palsy, Trembling, Convulsions, Kills Worms, and Cures Deafness, and most Diseases in Women, &c. It is only to be had of *Ben. Tracy*, at the Three Bibles on London Bridge, at 11. 6d. per Ounce. The Bottles are sealed with the Balsam Tree.



